Service Manual

iPF600 series iPF610



### Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products. This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

#### Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products. When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

The following paragraph does not apply to any countries where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.

#### Trademarks

The product names and company names used in this manual are the registered trademarks of the individual companies.

#### Copyright

This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the written consent of Canon Inc.

### COPYRIGHT © 2001 CANON INC.

Printed in Japan

Caution Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

# Symbols Used

This documentation uses the following symbols to indicate special information:

#### Symbol Description



Indicates an item of a non-specific nature, possibly classified as Note, Caution, or Warning.

Indicates an item requiring care to avoid electric shocks.

Indicates an item requiring care to avoid combustion (fire).

Indicates an item prohibiting disassembly to avoid electric shocks or problems.



Indicates an item requiring disconnection of the power plug from the electric outlet.



Indicates an item intended to provide notes assisting the understanding of the topic in question.



Indicates an item of reference assisting the understanding of the topic in question.



Provides a description of a service mode.



Provides a description of the nature of an error indication.

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

1. Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.

In the diagrams, represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol, the arrow — indicates the direction of the electric signal. The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in

The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.

2. In the digital circuits, 'l'is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low". (The voltage value, how-ever, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (\*) as in "DRMD\*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'. In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.

All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine."

# Contents

# Chapter 1 PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

| 1.1 Product Overview  |      |
|---|------|
| 1.1.1 Product Overview  |      |
| 1.2 Features  |      |
| 1.2.1 Features  |      |
| 1.2.2 Printhead   |      |
| 1.2.3 lnk Tank  |      |
| 1.2.4 Cutter  |      |
| 1.2.5 Roll Feed Unit  |      |
| 1.2.6 Stand   |      |
| 1.2.7 IEEE1394 (FireWire) Board   |      |
| 1.2.8 Consumables   |      |
| 1.3 Product Specifications  | 1- 6 |
| 1.3.1 Product Specifications  |      |
| 1.4 Detailed Specifications   |      |
| 1.4.1 Print Speed and Direction   |      |
| 1.4.2 Interface Specifications  |      |
| 1.5 Names and Functions of Components   |      |
| 1.5.1 Front   |      |
| 1.5.2 Rear  |      |
| 1.5.3 Top Cover (Inside)  |      |
| 1.5.4 Manual Loading Area   |      |
| 1.5.5 Roll Feed Unit Cover (Inside)   |      |
| 1.5.6 Carriage  |      |
| 1.5.7 Inside  |      |
| 1.6 Basic Operation   |      |
| 1.6.1 Operation Panel   |      |
| 1.6.2 Main Menu   |      |
| 1.7 Safety and Precautions  |      |
| 1.7.1 Safety Precautions  |      |
| 1.7.1.1 Moving Parts  |      |
| 1.7.1.2 Adhesion of Ink   |      |
| 1.7.1.3 Electric Parts  |      |
| 1.7.2 Other Precautions   |      |
| 1.7.2.1 Printhead   |      |
| 1.7.2.2 Ink Tank  |      |
| 1.7.2.3 Handling the Printer  |      |
| 1.7.3 Precautions When Servicing Printer  |      |
| 1.7.3.1 Notes on the Data Stored in the Printer   |      |
| 1.7.3.2 Confirming the Firmware Version<br>1.7.3.3 Precautions against Static Electricity |      |
| 1.7.3.4 Precautions for Disassembly/Reassembly  |      |
| 1.7.3.5 Self-diagnostic Feature   |      |
| 1.7.3.6 Disposing of the Lithium Battery  |      |
|   |      |

# Chapter 2 TECHNICAL REFERENCE

| 2.1 Basic Operation Outline | 2- 1 |
|-----------------------------|------|
| 2.1.1 Printer Diagram       | 2- 1 |
| 2.1.2 Print Signal Sequence | 2-2  |
| 2.1.3 Print Driving         |      |
|                             |      |

| 2.2 Firmware                                       |       |
|--|-------|
| 2.2.1 Operation Sequence at Power-on               |       |
| 2.2.2 Operation Sequence at Power-off              |       |
| 2.2.3 Print Control                                |       |
| 2.2.4 Print Position Adjustment Function           |       |
| 2.2.5 Head Management                              |       |
| 2.2.6 Printhead Overheating Protection Control     |       |
| 2.2.7 Pause between Pages                          |       |
| 2.2.8 White Raster Skip                            |       |
| 2.2.9 Sleep Mode                                   |       |
| 2.3 Printer Mechanical System                      |       |
| 2.3.1 Outline                                      |       |
| 2.3.1.1 Outline                                    |       |
| 2.3.2 Ink Passage                                  |       |
| 2.3.2.1 lnk Passage                                |       |
| 2.3.2.2 Ink Task Unit                              |       |
| 2.3.2.3 Carriage Unit                              |       |
| 2.3.2.4 Printhead                                  |       |
| 2.3.2.5 Purge Unit                                 |       |
| 2.3.2.6 Maintenance Cartridge                      |       |
| 2.3.2.7 Air Flow                                   |       |
| 2.3.3 Paper Path                                   |       |
| 2.3.3.1 Outline                                    |       |
| 2.3.3.2 Paper Path                                 |       |
| 2.3.3.3 Cutter Unit                                |       |
| 2.4 Printer Electrical System                      |       |
| 2.4.1 Outline                                      |       |
| 2.4.1.1 Overview                                   |       |
| 2.4.2 Main Controller                              |       |
| 2.4.2.1 Main controller components                 |       |
| 2.4.3 Carriage Relay PCB                           |       |
| 2.4.3.1 Carriage PCB components                    |       |
| 2.4.4 Motor Driver                                 |       |
| 2.4.4.1 Roll feed unit PCB components              |       |
| 2.4.5 Maintenance Cartridge Relay PCB              |       |
| 2.4.5.1 Maintenance cartridge relay PCB components |       |
| 2.4.6 Power Supply                                 |       |
| 2.4.6.1 Power supply block diagram                 |       |
| 2.5 Detection Functions with Sensors               |       |
| 2.5.1 Sensors for covers                           |       |
| 2.5.2 Ink passage system                           | 2- 51 |
| 2.5.3 Carriage system                              |       |
| 2.5.4 Paper path system                            | 2- 54 |
| 2.5.5 Others                                       |       |

# Chapter 3 INSTALLATION

| 3.1 Installation                   |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 3.1.1 Making Pre-Checks            |  |
| 3.1.1.1 Making Pre-Checks          |  |
| 3.1.2 Unpacking and Installation   |  |
| 3.1.2.1 Unpacking and Installation |  |
| 3.1.2.2 Installing the Stand       |  |
|                                    |  |

# Chapter 4 DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY

| 4.1 Service Parts   | 4- | 1 |
|---------------------|----|---|
| 4.1.1 Service Parts | 4- | 1 |

| 4.2 Disassembly/Reassembly  |       |
|---|-------|
| 4.2.1 Disassembly/Reassembly                                      |       |
| 4.3 Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly                  |       |
| 4.3.1 Note on locations prohibited from disassembly               |       |
| 4.3.2 Moving the carriage manually                                |       |
| 4.3.3 Units requiring draining of ink                             |       |
| 4.3.4 External Covers   |       |
| 4.3.5 Driving Unit  |       |
| 4.3.6 Cutter  |       |
| 4.3.7 Carriage Unit   |       |
| 4.3.8 Pick-Up/Feeder Unit   |       |
| 4.3.9 Roll Feed Unit  |       |
| 4.3.10 Purge Unit   |       |
| 4.3.11 Waste Ink Collection Unit                                  |       |
| 4.3.12 Ink Tank Unit  |       |
| 4.3.13 Head Management Sensor                                     |       |
| 4.3.14 Multi Sensor   |       |
| 4.3.15 PCBs   |       |
| 4.3.16 Opening the Cap/Moving the Wiper Unit                      |       |
| 4.3.17 Opening/Closing the Ink Supply Valve                       |       |
| 4.3.18 Draining the Ink   |       |
| 4.4 Applying the Grease   | 4- 46 |
| 4.4.1 Applying the Grease   |       |
| 4.5 Adjustment and Setup Items                                    |       |
| 4.5.1 Adjustment Item List  |       |
| 4.5.2 Procedure after Replacing the Carriage Unit or Multi Sensor | 4- 53 |
| 4.5.3 Procedure after Replacing the Head Management Sensor        | 4- 56 |
|   |       |

# Chapter 5 MAINTENANCE

| 5.1 Periodic Replacement Parts   | 5- 1   |
|----------------------------------|--------|
| 5.1.1 Periodic Replacement Parts | . 5- 1 |
| 5.2 Consumable Parts             |        |
| 5.2.1 Consumable Parts           |        |
| 5.3 Periodic Maintenance         | .5- 1  |
| 5.3.1 Periodic Maintenance       |        |

# Chapter 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

| 6.1 Troubleshooting                            | 6- 1  |
|--|-------|
| 6.1.1 Outline                                  |       |
| 6.1.1.1 Outline of Troubleshooting             | 6- 1  |
| 6.2 Location of Connectors and Pin Arrangement | 6- 1  |
| 6.2.1 Main controller PCB                      | 6- 1  |
| 6.2.2 Carriage PCB                             | 6- 10 |
| 6.2.3 Power supply                             | 6- 15 |
| 6.2.4 Roll feed unit PCB                       | 6- 15 |
| 6.3 Version Up                                 | 6- 17 |
| 6.3.1 Firmware Update Tool                     | 6- 17 |
| 6.4 Service Tools                              | 6- 18 |
| 6.4.1 Tool List                                | 6- 18 |

# Chapter 7 SERVICE MODE

| 7.1 Service Mode             | 7- | 1   |
|------------------------------|----|-----|
| 7.1.1 Service Mode Operation | 7- | · 1 |

| 7.1.2 Map of the Service Mode     |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| 7.1.3 Details of Service Mode     |       |
| 7.1.4 Sample Printout             | 7- 15 |
| 7.2 Special Mode                  |       |
| 7.2.1 Special Modes for Servicing | 7- 20 |

# Chapter 8 ERROR CODE

| 8.1 Outline               |      |
|---------------------------|------|
| 8.1.1 Outline             |      |
| 8.2 Warning Table         |      |
| 8.2.1 Warnings            |      |
| 8.3 Error Table           |      |
| 8.3.1 Error Code List     | 8- 2 |
| 8.4 Sevice Call Table     |      |
| 8.4.1 Service call errors |      |
|                           |      |

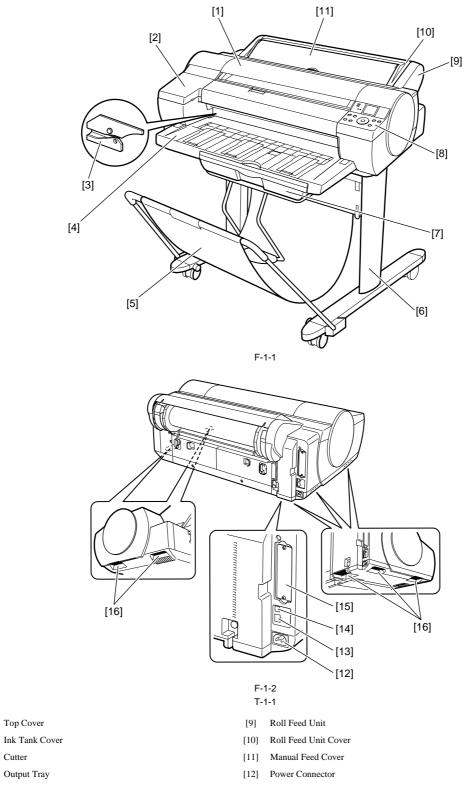
# Contents

| 1.1 Product Overview  |  |
|---|--|
| 1.1.1 Product Overview  |  |
| 1.2 Features  |  |
| 1.2.1 Features  |  |
| 1.2.2 Printhead   |  |
| 1.2.3 Ink Tank  |  |
| 1.2.4 Cutter  |  |
| 1.2.5 Roll Feed Unit  |  |
| 1.2.6 Stand   |  |
| 1.2.7 IEEE1394 (FireWire) Board   |  |
| 1.2.8 Consumables   |  |
| 1.3 Product Specifications  |  |
| 1.3.1 Product Specifications  |  |
| 1.4 Detailed Specifications   |  |
| 1.4.1 Print Speed and Direction   |  |
| 1.4.2 Interface Specifications  |  |
| 1.5 Names and Functions of Components   |  |
| 1.5.1 Front   |  |
| 1.5.2 Rear  |  |
| 1.5.3 Top Cover (Inside)  |  |
| 1.5.4 Manual Loading Area   |  |
| 1.5.5 Roll Feed Unit Cover (Inside)   |  |
| 1.5.6 Carriage  |  |
| 1.5.7 Inside  |  |
| 1.6 Basic Operation   |  |
| 1.6.1 Operation Panel   |  |
| 1.6.2 Main Menu   |  |
| 1.7 Safety and Precautions  |  |
| 1.7.1 Safety Precautions  |  |
| 1.7.1.1 Moving Parts  |  |
| 1.7.1.2 Adhesion of Ink   |  |
| 1.7.1.3 Electric Parts  |  |
| 1.7.2 Other Precautions   |  |
| 1.7.2.1 Printhead   |  |
| 1.7.2.2 Ink Tank  |  |
| 1.7.2.3 Handling the Printer  |  |
| 1.7.3 Precautions When Servicing Printer  |  |
| 1.7.3.1 Notes on the Data Stored in the Printer                                   |  |
| 1.7.3.2 Confirming the Firmware Version   |  |
| 1.7.3.3 Precautions against Static Electricity                                    |  |
| 1.7.3.4 Precautions for Disassembly/Reassembly<br>1.7.3.5 Self-diagnostic Feature |  |
| 1.7.3.6 Disposing of the Lithium Battery  |  |
| 1.7.5.6 Disposing of the Entitum Dattery  |  |

## **1.1 Product Overview**

#### 1.1.1 Product Overview

This printer is capable of printing on A4- to A1-size cut sheets and its maximum print width is 24 inches. This printer is a desktop large-format printer five-colors (dye- and pigment-based colors) printer that can be used to print office documents as well as handy POP and posters. An roll feed unit is equipped for printing on roll media.



Basket [5]

Cutter

[6] Stand

[1]

[2]

[3]

[4]

- [7] Cassette
- [8] Operation Panel

- [13] Ethernet Connector
- [14] USB Port
- [15] Expansion Board Slot
- Carrying Handle [16]

## 1.2 Features

#### 1.2.1 Features

- Black ink suitable for the selected media type is automatically selected from two types of black ink, "black ink" for vivid and glossy printing and "matte black ink" for matte and high-quality printing.

- One-inch wide printhead having 2,560 nozzles per color, which are as many as the those of the existing models. High-density printhead technology "FINE" that - One-field whee printing a daying 2,500 hozzle's per color, which are as many as the unset of the existing indexist ingredensity printing requirements of a high order is employed for accurate ejection of ultrasmall 4-pl drops of ink to the target positions.
- Imaging processor "L-COA" incorporated for high-speed image data processing. High-speed processing of 5-color, 12-bit large-size images and printer control for high-accuracy operation of high-density head can be performed with a single chip.
- Support for roll media, cassette paper pick-up, manual feed from front, and manual feed from top (4-way paper supply). A maximum of 1.5 mm thick of paper

can be manually fed from the front.

- Borderless printing on and auto cutting of roll media.

- Standard support for 10Base-T/100Base-TX. Standard support for USB 2.0 Hi-Speed. Optional support for IEEE1394.

Data scanned using CanoScan can be easily printed on large-size paper just like a dedicated copier. Just pressing the Start button allows you to blow up an original of up to A3 size in collaboration with Canon Image RUNNER.
Support for remote notification utility which is used to send an E-mail when an alarm or error occurs.

Functional enhancements new to this model include:

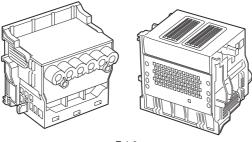
- Enhanced ease of operation

A 160-by-128-dot-large LCD, coupled with the new [Paper Load/Eject] button, offers drastically enhanced ease of operation.

#### 1.2.2 Printhead

Printhead set on the carriage is a 6-color integral disposable type. On the printhead, two rows of 1,280 nozzles (total 2,560 nozzles) are arranged in a staggered pattern.

If print quality does not improve despite carrying out the specified cleaning, the printhead must be replaced with a new one. Generally, it is recommended that the printhead be replaced about 12 months after you have opened the package.





#### 1.2.3 Ink Tank

The ink tank is disposable.

There are four dye-based ink colors (black, cyan, magenta, and yellow) and one pigment-based ink color (matte black).

This printer features a mechanism by which only the correct color ink tank will fit in the given slot. When the message No Ink is displayed, replace the ink tank with a new one. Also, each ink tank should generally be replaced six months after you have opened the package.



#### 1.2.4 Cutter

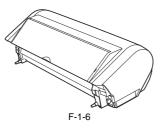
A round-blade cuter comes with the cutter unit.



### 1.2.5 Roll Feed Unit

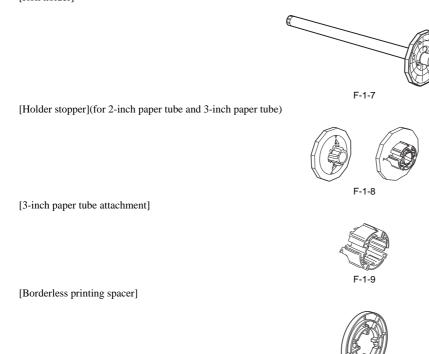
#### **Roll Feed Unit**

The roll feed unit is optionally available to use roll media with this printer.



#### Roll holder set

This set consists of roll holder, holder stopper, 3-inch paper tube attachment, and borderless printing spacer (commonly used for 2-inch paper tube and 3-inch paper tube). [Roll holder]



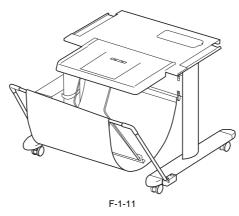
#### MEMO:

A borderless printing spacer is used to perform borderless printing on A2-size (420 mm) roll media. This printer is furnished with a number of borderless printing ink receiving channels on the platen to address multi-sized borderless printing needs. Borderless printing on A2-size roll media is made possible by using a spacer, without needing to produce a new borderless printing ink receiving channel.

F-1-10

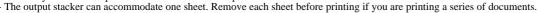
#### 1.2.6 Stand

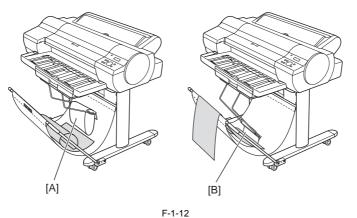
It is a stand that puts the printer. Equipped with casters so that the printer can be easily moved. The output stacker included with stand can use by the two ways of the regular position or extended position.



#### MEMO:

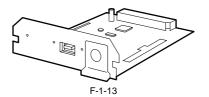
Use the output stacker in the regular position [A]. However, for the specified media, it can also be used in the extended position [B]. The media can be removed more easily when the output stacker is in the extended position.
The output stacker can accommodate one sheet. Remove each sheet before printing if you are printing a series of documents.





### 1.2.7 IEEE1394 (FireWire) Board

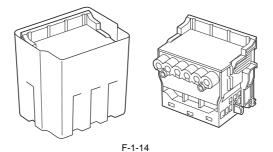
**IEEE1394 (FireWire) expansion board (option)** An interface board that provides an additional IEEE1394 (FireWire) port.



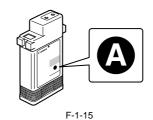
#### 1.2.8 Consumables

#### Printhead

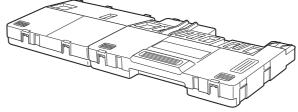
The consumable print head is the same as that supplied with the printer.



**Ink Tanks** The consumable ink tanks are available in five colors (matte black, black, cyan, magenta, and yellow). They are the same as those supplied with the printer. Each ink tank must be replaced with a new one six month after you have opened the package. The ink tank that can be used with this printer is labeled "A".



Maintenance cartridge The consumable maintenance cartridge is the same as that supplied with the printer.



F-1-16

# **1.3 Product Specifications**

### **1.3.1 Product Specifications**

| Туре                      | Bubble jet large-sized paper printer   |
|---------------------------|--|
| Feeding system            | Automatic feeding of one roll media/Cassette paper feeding/One cut   |
|                           | sheet (manual feed from front)/One cut sheet (manual feed from top)  |
| Feeding capacity          | - Roll media<br>One roll at the back/Outer diameter of roll: 150 mm or less/Inner<br>diameter of paper tube: 2 or 3 inches<br>- Cut sheet<br>Cassette:250 sheets(A4), 100 sheets(A3), 50 sheets(A2), manual feed:1   |
| Delivery method           | Delivers the media with its printed side up in the forward direction.  |
| Sheet delivery capability | <ul> <li>Roll media</li> <li>1 sheet</li> <li>Cut sheet</li> <li>50 sheets (plain paper of A3 or smaller) or 20 sheets (plain paper of larger than A3)</li> </ul>  |
| Cutter                    | Automatically cuts paper laterally. Cartridge-type (with round blade)  |
| Type of media             | <ul> <li>- Roll media</li> <li>Plain Paper, Plain Paper(High Quality), Plain Paper(High Grade),<br/>Coated Paper, Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper,<br/>Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Economy Bond Paper,<br/>Universal Bond Paper, Premium Coated Paper, Matte Coated Paper<br/>90gsm, Glossy Photographic Paper 240gsm, HW Glossy Photo<br/>Paper(Heavyweight Glossy Photographic Paper 300gsm), HW Satin<br/>Photo Paper(Heavyweight Satin Photographic Paper 300gsm), HW Satin<br/>Photo Paper(Heavyweight Satin Photographic Paper 300gsm), Premium<br/>RC Photo Luster(Premium RC Photo Luster, 10 mil), Commercial<br/>Proofing Paper(Commercial Proofing Paper 200gsm), Commercial RC<br/>Proofing 210gsm, Commercial RC Proofing 270gsm</li> <li>- Cut sheet (cassette)</li> <li>Plain Paper, Plain Paper(High Quality), Plain Paper(High Grade), High<br/>Resolution Paper, Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Matte Photo<br/>Paper, Glossy Paper, Photo Paper Pro, Photo Paper Plus, Photo Paper<br/>Plus Semi-Gloss</li> <li>- Cut sheet (manual feed from top)</li> <li>Plain Paper, Matte Photo Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, Glossy Paper, Photo Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy<br/>Photo Paper, Glossy Paper, Photo Paper Pro, Photo Paper Plus, Photo<br/>Paper Plus Semi-Gloss, Economy Bond Paper, Universal Bond Paper,<br/>Premium Coated Paper, Matte Coated Paper 90gsm, Glossy<br/>Photographic Paper 240gsm, HW Glossy Photo Paper 90gsm, Satin<br/>Photographic Paper 240gsm, HW Glossy Photo Paper (Heavyweight<br/>Glossy Photographic Paper 300gsm), Premium RC<br/>Photo Luster(Premium RC Photo Luster, 10 mil), Commercial Proofing<br/>Paper(Commercial Proofing Paper 200gsm), Commercial RC Proofing<br/>210gsm, Commercial RC Proofing 270gsm</li> <li>- Cut sheet (manual feed from front)<br/>POP Board</li> </ul> |
| Supported thickness       | Roll media: 0.08 to 0.8 mm   |
|                           | Cassette: 0.08 to 0.3 mm<br>Manual feed from top: 0.08 to 0.8 mm<br>Manual feed from front: 0.5 to 1.5 mm  |
| Media size (Roll media)   | Width:203mm(8inch) X 610mm(24inch)<br>Length:203mm X 18m<br>Maximum outside diameter: 150 mm   |
| Media size (Cut sheet)    | <ul> <li>Manual feed from top</li> <li>Width:203mm(8inch) to 610mm(24inch)</li> <li>Length:276mm to 1600mm</li> <li>Manual feed from front</li> <li>Width:203mm(8inch) to 610mm(24inch)</li> <li>Length:520mm X 914mm</li> <li>Cassette:only standard size</li> <li>Width:203mm(8inch) X 432mm(17inch)</li> <li>Length:279mm X 594mm</li> </ul>  |

=

| Printable area (Roll media)                  | Area excluding 3mm from the leading edge, 3 mm from the trailing edge,<br>and 3 mm from the left and right edges.<br>Borderless printing: 0 mm from the leading edge, trailing edge, and left   |
|--|---|
|  | and right edges.  |
|  | Width of media allowing borderless printing:<br>10"(254mm), B4(257mm), A3+(329mm), 14"(356mm), 16"(407mm),<br>A2(420mm), A2+/17"(432mm), B2(515mm), A1(594mm),<br>24"(610mm)  |
|  | Media type allowing borderless printing:<br>Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Glossy Photo Paper,<br>Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Premium Coated Paper, Glossy Photographic<br>Paper 190gsm, Glossy Photographic Paper 240gsm, Satin Photographic<br>Paper 240gsm, HW Glossy Photo Paper, HW Satin Photo Paper,<br>Premium RC Photo Luster |
| Printable area (Cut sheet)                   | Area excluding 3 mm from the leading edge, 3 mm from the trailing edge (23 mm when supplied from manual feed from top or selected fine art), and 3 mm from the left and right edges.  |
| Printing recommendation area<br>(Roll media) | Area excluding 20 mm from leading edge, 5 mm from the trailing edge<br>and 5 mm from the left and right edges (standard size).  |
| Printing recommendation area<br>(Cut sheet)  | Area excluding 20 mm from the leading edge, 27 mm from the trailing edge, and 5 mm from the left and right edges (standard size).   |
| Memory                                       | 256MB<br>Increase of memory: none   |
| Firmware                                     | Flash ROM (update from USB and Ethernet, IEEE1394)<br>- Printer description language<br>GARO (Graphic Arts language with Raster Operation), HP-GL/2, HP<br>RTL  |
| Interface                                    | USB2.0, Ethernet, IEEE1394 (option)   |
| Operation panel                              | LCD (160 X 128 dots), 12 keys, 5 LEDs<br>- Panel language<br>English<br>- Message language<br>English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Chinese, Korean, Russianand  |
|  | and Japanese  |
| Printhead/Ink Tank type                      | Printhead and separate ink tanks  |
| Printhead                                    | [PF-03] Number nozzles: 2560 nozzles per color  |
| Ink tank                                     | [PFI-102]MBK, BK, C, M, Y<br>Capacity: 130 ml per color (Ink tanks supplied with the printer contain<br>90 ml of each color.)   |
| Detection functions (Cover system)           | Detects opening/closing of the top cover and ink tank cover.  |
| Detection functions (Ink passage system)     | Detects presence/absence of ink tank, ink level (dot count and electrode),<br>presence/absence of the maintenance cartridge, waste ink full level,<br>presence/absence of the printhead, and opening/closing of the supply<br>valve.  |
| Detection functions (Carriage system)        | Detects the ambient temperature, head temperature, presence/absence of the head, and no ink ejection.   |
| Detection functions (Paper path system)      | Detects presence/absence of paper, cutter position, presence/absence of the cassette, leading/trailing edge of paper, paper width, and skew.  |
| Operating noise                              | During printing: Approx. 52 dB (A) or less<br>During standby: Approx. 35 dB (A) or less   |
| Operating environment                        | Temperature: 15 to 30 degrees centigrade<br>Humidity: 10% to 80% without dew condensation   |
| Print quality guaranteed<br>environment      | Temperature: 15 to 30 degrees centigrade<br>Humidity: 10% to 80% RH   |
| Power supply                                 | 100-120 VAC (50/60 Hz), 220-240 VAC (50/60 Hz)  |
| Power consumption (Maximum)                  | During printing: Max. 100 W   |
| Power consumption                            | In power save (sleep) mode: 5 W or less(220-240 VAC: 6W or less)<br>(When IEEE1394 board installed, 10W or less[220-240 VAC: 11W or<br>less])<br>During standby: 1 W or less  |
| Printer unit dimensions<br>(WxDxH)           | 997 x 810 x 344 mm  |
| Weight                                       | Approx. 55 kg   |
|  | 11  |

# **1.4 Detailed Specifications**

## 1.4.1 Print Speed and Direction

1-9

|                | Media Type   | Print Priority                                     | Print<br>Quality  | Print-<br>Pass  | Printing Direction   | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi)  | Used BK<br>ink   |
|----------------|--|--|---|---|--|---|--|
| in Paper/      | Plain Paper  | Office Document                                    | Standard  | 1/2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
| Recycled Paper |  | Line Document/                                     | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Text   |   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  |   | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Image  | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 4   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | Plain Paper (High Quality)                           | Office Document                                    | Standard  | 1/2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Line Document/                                     | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Text   |   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | riigii  |   | -  |   |  |
|                |  | -  | -   | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Image  | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 4   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | Plain Paper (High Grade)                             | Office Document                                    | Standard  | 1/2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Line Document/                                     | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Text   |   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  |   | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Image  | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | 8-   | Standard  | 2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 4   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | All Disin Donor Concerns MDK                         | Office Document                                    | Standard  | 4   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK                         |  |   |   |  |   |  |
|                |  | Line Document/<br>Text                             | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Text   |   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  |   | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Image  | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 4   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | Economy Bond Paper                                   | Office Document                                    | Standard  | 1/2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | 5 1  | Line Document/                                     | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Text   |   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  |   |  |   |  |
|                |  |  | High  | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | x  | D 0   | 2   | Single-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Image  | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | High  | 4   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | Universal Bond Paper                                 | Office Document                                    | Standard  | 1/2   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  | Line Document/                                     | Draft   | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                | Text   | 1  | 1   | Bi-directional  | 1200x1200  | MBK   |  |
|                |  |  |   |   |  | L   | ) (DV  |
|                |  |  | Standard  | 1   | Bi-directional   | 1200x1200   | MBK  |
|                |  |  | Standard<br>High  | 1 2   |  | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200  | MBK<br>MBK   |
|                |  |  |   |   | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional   |   |  |
|                |  | Image  | High  | 2   | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200  | MBK<br>MBK   |
|                |  | Image  | High<br>Draft   | 2<br>2<br>1   | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200   | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK  |
|                |  | Image  | High<br>Draft<br>Standard   | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2  | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200  | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK   |
|                | Standard Paper 1560D 90~                             |  | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High   | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4   | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200   | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK   |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document                                    | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard   | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2  | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200  | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK                                    |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document/                                   | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High   | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1   | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200   | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK                             |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document                                    | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft  | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1                                    | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200  | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK               |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document/                                   | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft<br>Standard                                      | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>1                          | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200   | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK               |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document/                                   | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft  | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1                                    | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200  | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK               |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document/                                   | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft<br>Standard                                      | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>1                          | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200   | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK               |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document/                                   | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft<br>Standard                                      | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>2                          | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Single-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200  | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK        |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document<br>Line Document/<br>Text          | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High                              | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>2<br>2                     | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Single-directional   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200                           | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g                             | Office Document<br>Line Document/<br>Text          | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Draft<br>Standard         | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>1<br>2 | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional                                     | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200 | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK |
|                |  | Office Document<br>Line Document/<br>Text<br>Image | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4      | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200 | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK |
|                | Standard Paper 1569B 80g<br>Standard Paper 1570B 90g | Office Document<br>Line Document/<br>Text          | High<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Standard<br>Draft<br>Standard<br>High<br>Draft<br>Standard         | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>4<br>1/2<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>1<br>2 | Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Single-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional                                     | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200<br>1200x1200 | MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK<br>MBK |

\_

|              | Media Type                      | Print Priority         | Print<br>Quality | Print-<br>Pass | Printing Direction               | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi) | Used BK<br>ink |
|--------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| Coated Paper | Coated Paper                    | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | <b>.</b>               | a 1 1            | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | L' D //                | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              | Heavyweight Coated Paper        | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional | 1200x1200                    | BK<br>BK       |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200       | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | riigii           | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | iniage                 | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              | Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper  | Line Document/         | Draft            | 12             | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              | Zinia Hoavy weigin Couled Faper | Text                   | Diait            | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | 0                | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | 5                      | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              | Recycled Coated Paper           | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              | High Resolution Paper           | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | ВК             |
|              |                                 |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | ВК             |
|              | Premium Matte Paper             | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | x                      | G. 1 .           | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              | Matte Photo Paper               | Line Dogument          | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              | mane ribio raper                | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 1 2            | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200       | BK<br>BK       |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional<br>Bi-directional | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200       | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | ingli            | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200       | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200<br>1200x1200       | BK             |
|              |                                 | image                  | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Highest          | o<br>16        | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200<br>2400x1200       | BK             |
|              | Colored Coated Paper            | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | a apor                          |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | Premium Coated Paper            | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Text                   | 2.1411           | 1              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | 5                | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional                   | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|              |                                 |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional                   | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
| T            |                                 |                        |                  | 1              |                                  |                              |                |

|               | Media Type                                      | Print Priority | Print<br>Quality | Print-<br>Pass | Printing Direction | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi) | Used BK<br>ink |
|---------------|---|----------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| Photo Paper   | Glossy Photo Paper                              | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Semi-Glossy Photo Paper                         | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Photo Paper Plus                                | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Photo Paper Plus Semi-Gloss                     | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Ĩ   | U              | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Photo Paper Pro                                 | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   | innage         | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Glossy Paper                                    | Imaga          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Glossy Paper                                    | Image          |                  |                |                    |                              |                |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   | T              | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper 2                | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Heavywght SemiGlos Photo Paper 2                | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Satin Photographic Paper 190gsm                 | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Premium RC Photo Luster, 10 mil                 | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   | -              | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Instant Dry Papers Glossy 200g                  | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   | iniage         | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Instant Dry Papers Satin 200g                   | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Instant Dry 1 apers Satin 200g                  | Intage         | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                |                  | o<br>16        | Bi-directional     |                              | BK             |
|               | Dhata Daway Wish Chasses 250a                   | <b>T</b>       | Highest          |                |                    | 2400x1200                    |                |
|               | Photo Paper High Glossy 250g                    | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   | -              | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Photo Paper Semi Matt 250g                      | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Photo Paper Satin 240g                          | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Photo Paper Pearl 260g                          | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
| roofing Paper | Proofing Paper                                  | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
| 6 -r 54       |   | 5              | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200<br>2400x1200       | BK             |
|               | Professional Proof and Photo Glossy 195g        | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               | rotessionar root and rhote clossy 195g          | mage           |                  | 8              |                    |                              |                |
|               |   |                | High             |                | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   | x              | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Professional Proof and Photo Semiglossy<br>195g | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               | 1758  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               |   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | Professional Proof and Photo Semigloss          | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|               | 255g  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|               | 1   |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |

=

|                            | Media Type                             | Print Priority         | Print<br>Quality | Print-<br>Pass | Printing Direction | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi) | Used BK<br>ink |
|----------------------------|--|------------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| Synthetic Paper            | Synthetic Paper                        | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            | Adhesive Synthetic Paper               | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
| Board                      | POP Board                              | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
| Adhesive Matt              | High Resolution Graphic Paper Self ADH | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
| Paper                      |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
| CAD                        | CAD Tracing Paper                      | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
| CAD Translucent Matte Film | CAD Translucent Matte Film             | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                            |  |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
| Special                    | Special 1                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            | Special 2                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            | Special 3                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            | Special 4                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            | Special 5                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                            |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |

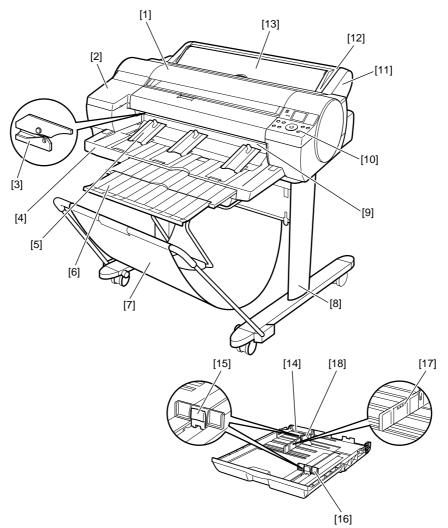
#### 1.4.2 Interface Specifications

a. USB (standard) (1) Interface type USB 2.0 Hi-Speed (Full speed (12 Mbits/sec), High speed (480 Mbits/sec)) (2) Data transfer system Control transfer Bulk transfer (3) Signal level Compliant with the USB standard. (4) Interface cable Twisted-pair shielded cable, 5.0 m max. Compliant with the USB standard. Wire materials: AWG No.28, data wire pair (AWF: American Wire Gauge) AWG No.20 to No.28, power distribution wire pair (5) Interface connector Printer side: Series B receptacle compliant with USB standard Cable side: Series B plug compliant with USB standard b. Network (standard) (1) Interface type Interface compliant with IEEE802.3 (2) Data transfer system
10Base-T/100Base-TX
(3) Signal level
Input: Threshold
10Base-TX: Turn-on +1000 mV diff pk-pk, Turn-off +200 mV diff pk-pk Output: 10Base-T: +2.2 V to +2.8 V 100Base-TX: +0.95 to +1.05 V (4) Interface cable Category 5 (UTP or FTP) cable, 100 m or shorter Compliant with ANSI/EIA/TIA-568A or ANSI/EIA/TIA-568B (5) Interface connector Printer side: Compliant with IEEE802.3, ANSI X3.263, ISO/IEC60603-7 c. IEEE1394 (option) (1) Interface type Interface compliant with IEEE1394-1995, P1394a (Version 2.0) (2) Data transfer system Asynchronous transfer (3) Signal level Input: Differential input voltage: During S100 settlement: +173 mV to +260 mV During data reception: +142 mV to +260 mV During S200 settlement: +171 mV to +262 mV During data reception: +132 mV to +260 mV During S400 settlement: +168 mV to +265 mV During data reception: +118 mV to +260 mV Output: Differential output voltage: +172 mV to +265 mV (4) Interface cable Twisted-pair shielded cable, 4.5 m max. Compliant with IEEE1394-1995 standard or P1394a (Version 2.0) standard (5) Interface connector

Printer side: 6-pin connector (socket) compliant with IEEE1394 standard Cable side: 6-pin connector (plug) compliant with IEEE1394 standard Cable side: RJ-45 type compliant with ANSI/EIA/TIA-568A or ANSI/EIA/TIA-568B

### **1.5 Names and Functions of Components**

#### 1.5.1 Front



F-1-17

[1] Top cover

Open this cover when installing the printhead or remove the media jammed inside the printer.

[2] Ink tank cover Open this cover when replacing ink tanks.

[3] Ĉutter

A round-blade cutter cuts roll media automatically. It is stowed inside when it is out of use.

[4] Output tray Printed documents are ejected into the output tray.

[5] Output guides

These guides support printed documents as they are ejected, preventing jams. Raise the guides before printing on rolls.

[6] Output tray extension An extension to prevent ejected paper from falling to the floor. Pull out the extension to match the paper size before printing on sheets.

[7] Basket

Receives printed matter as it is ejected. Only one sheet can be housed in the basket.

[8] Stand

The base on which the printer is mounted. The stand equipped with casters is easy to move.

[9] Paper eject slot (paper tray front loading port)
All printed matter is ejected from this port. In loading thick paper, insert it into this port.
[10] Operation panel Contains the power button, online button display and so on.
[11] Roll feed unit

Load roll media on this unit.

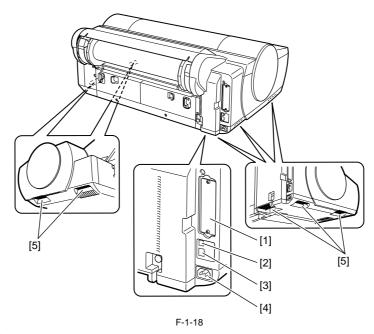
[12] Roll feed unit cover

- Load roll media with this cover open.
- [13] Paper tray cover
- Load cut sheet at the paper tray top loading port with this cover open. This cover is opened, and the cut sheet is set at top manual feed slot. [14] Cassette
- Load sheets in this tray.
- [15] Guide lever
- Squeeze these levers to slide the guides. [16] Length guide
- Adjust this guide to hold paper lengthwise.
- [17] Maximum capacity line
- A guide line indicating how many sheets can be loaded. Do not load paper over this line. [18] Width guide

Adjust this guide to hold paper widthwise.

=

#### 1.5.2 Rear



[1] Expansion board slot Insert the IEEE1394 (FireWire) expansion board (option) in this slot.

- [2] USB port Connect the USB cable to this port.

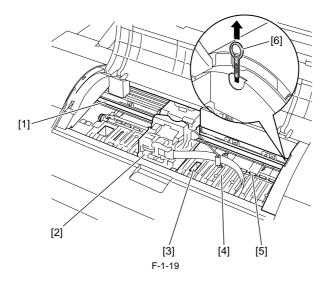
[3] Ethernet connector Connect the Ethernet cable to this connector.[4] Power connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

[5] Carrying handle (5)

The printer is carried with this handles of a right and left bottom.

#### 1.5.3 Top Cover (Inside)



Carriage shaft The carriage travels in this area.
 Carriage

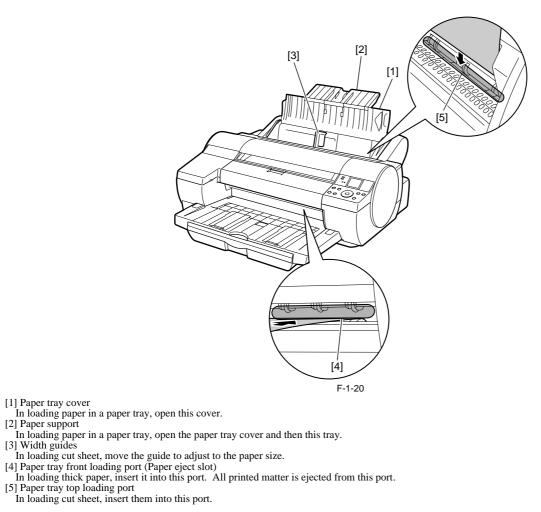
Moves the printheads.

[3] Borderless printing ink receiving channel Receives inks overflowing the edges of the paper during borderless printing.

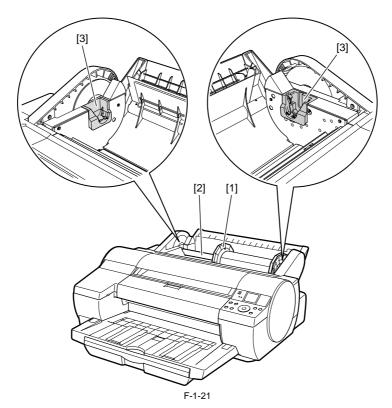
[4] Platen

[4] Fater
Paper and the printheads travel over the platen to execute printing. Suction holes on the surface prevent the paper from lifting.
[5] Pinch roller
A vital part needed to feed paper.
[6] Cleaner brush
Use this brush to wipe off chad over the plant when cleaning the inside of the top cover.

### 1.5.4 Manual Loading Area



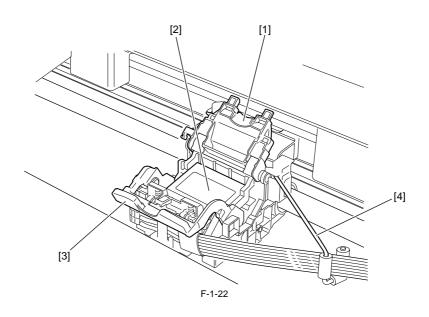
## 1.5.5 Roll Feed Unit Cover (Inside)



Roller holder Set roll media on this holder.
 Holder stopper

Use to secure roll media to the roller holder. [3] Roller holder slot Set the roller holder in this guide groove.

#### 1.5.6 Carriage



#### [1] Carriage

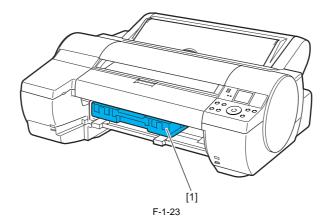
[2] Printhead lock cover This cover is used to lock the printhead. Open this cover when installing the printhead.

[3] Printhead The printhead incorporated nozzles. It is an important part for printing.

[4] Printhead lock lever This lever is used to lock the printhead. Open this lever when installing the printhead.

[5] Ink tube guide This stay is used as an ink tube guide.

#### 1.5.7 Inside

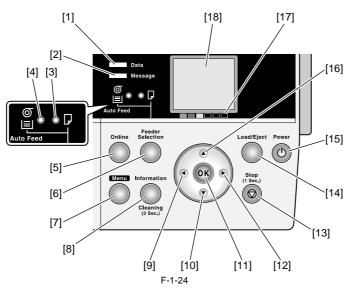


[1] Maintenance cartridge Absorbs excess ink

# 1.6 Basic Operation

#### 1.6.1 Operation Panel

This section explains the functions of the buttons and the meanings of the LEDs on the operation panel.



[1] Data lamp Blinking: Indicates that a print job is being received or processed if the printer is printing, or that a print job has paused or firmware data is being if the printer is not printing. Off: No print job is available.

[2] Message lamp

On: Indicates that a warning message is on display.

Blinking: Indicates that an error message is on display. Off: The printer is normal or is turned off.

[3] Cut sheet lamp (green)

On: Either the paper tray or paper tray front loading port is selected as a paper source. Off: Roll media are selected as a paper source.

- [4] Roll media lamp (green)

On: Roll media are selected as a paper source.

Off: Either the paper tray or paper tray front loading port is selected as a paper source.

[5] Online button

Toggles the printer mode between online and offline. On: Online mode.

Blinking: Emerging from sleep mode.

Off: Offline mode.

[6] Paper source button

Selects a paper source. Each time this button is pressed, the paper source toggles between roll media (roll media source) and cut sheet (paper tray or paper tray front loading port), with the paper source selector lamp illuminating.

[7] Menu button

Displays the printer main menu. [8] Information button

Displays the printer submenu. Each time this button is pressed, information about the inks and paper is displayed.

Hold this button depressed for 3 seconds to execute printhead cleaning ([Head Cleaning A]).

 button [9]

Press this button when the printer is in menu mode to view the menu at the upper level.

The button is also used from one position to the next when entering a numeric value.

If [<-- STOP] is on display, the guidance screen can be paused. If [<-- BACK] on display, the guidance screen can be moved backward.

[10] V button

Press this button when the printer is in offline mode to manually feed roll media.

Press this button when the printer is in menu mode to view the next item or setting.

[11] OK button

Press to set or set or execute a menu choice when the printer is in menu mode.

Press this button in any other situation to transition to the next screen as directed by a message appearing in the display.

[12] button

Press this button when the printer is in menu mode to view the menu at the lower level.

If [NEXT -->] on display, the guidance screen can be moved forward.

[13] Stop button

Press for longer than 1 second to cancel the job or ink drying process in progress. If cut sheet loading guidance or the like is on display, hold this button for longer than 1 second to stop the guidance. [14] Load/Eject button

Guidance offers a visual clue to loading (replacing)/removing paper. Press this button when no paper is loaded to view instructions on how to load (replace) paper in the display; press the button when paper is loaded to view instructions on how to remove the paper.

[15] Power button

Turns the printer on and off.

[16] **▲** button

Press this button when the printer is in offline mode to manually feed roll media in the direction opposite to that of ejection.

Press this button when the printer is in menu mode to view the last item or setting.

[17] Color labels

Represent ink tank colors in association with the remaining ink levels shown in the display.

[18] Display

Displays the printer menu, status or messages.

#### 1.6.2 Main Menu

The printer has a Main menu which includes a menu related to maintenance such as adjustment of ink ejection position of each nozzle and head cleaning, a menu related to printing settings such as auto cutting and ink drying time, and a menu related to parameters such as a message language.

Main menu operations

 How to enter the Main menu To enter the Main menu, press the [Menu] button on the operation panel.

# **b) How to exit the Main menu** To exit the Main menu, press the [Online] button.

#### c) Buttons used with the Main menu

- Selecting menus and parameters: [ ] or [ ] button
- Going to the next lower-level menu: [  $\mathbf{\nabla}$  ] button
- Going to the next higher-level menu: [▲] button Determining a selected menu or parameter: [OK] button

**2. Main Menu** The structure of the main menu is as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk "\*" are the defaults.

| First Level     | Second Level      | Third Level                              | Fourth Level | Fifth Level |
|-----------------|-------------------|--|--------------|-------------|
| [Paper Cut]     | [No]*             |  |              |             |
|                 | [Yes]             |  |              |             |
| Rep. Ink Tank]  | [No]*             |  |              |             |
|                 | [Yes]             |  |              |             |
| [Head Cleaning] | [Head Cleaning A] |  |              |             |
|                 | [Head Cleaning B] |  |              |             |
| Media Menu]     | [Cas Paper Type]  | [Plain Paper](*5)                        |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Plain Paper HQ](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Plain Paper HG](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | [All Plain Paper Conserve<br>MBK](*5)    |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Recycled Coated](*5)                    |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Coated Paper](*5)                       |              |             |
|                 |                   | [HW Coated](*5)                          |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Ex HW Coated](*5)                       |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Premium MatteP](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Glossy Photo](*5)                       |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Glossy Photo2](*5)                      |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Semi-Gl Photo](*5)                      |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Semi-Gl Photo2](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | [HW Glossy Photo](*5)                    |              |             |
|                 |                   | [HW SemiGl Photo](*5)                    |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Syn. Paper](*5)                         |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Adh. Syn. Paper](*5)                    |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Proofing Paper](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | [News Proof 1](*5)                       |              |             |
|                 |                   | [News Proof 2](*5)                       |              |             |
|                 |                   | [News Proof 3](*5)                       |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Colored Coated](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | [CAD Trace Paper](*5)                    |              |             |
|                 |                   | [CAD Matte Film](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | [CAD Clear Film](*5)                     |              |             |
|                 |                   | Special # Here, the number is 1 to 5(*5) |              |             |
|                 | [Cas Paper Size]  | [ISO A4]                                 |              |             |
|                 |                   | [ISO B2]                                 |              |             |
|                 |                   | [ISO B3]                                 |              |             |
|                 |                   | [ISO B4]                                 |              |             |
|                 |                   | [JIS B2]                                 |              |             |
|                 |                   | [JIS B3]                                 |              |             |
|                 |                   | [JIS B4]                                 |              |             |
|                 |                   | [22"X34"(ANSI D)]                        |              |             |
|                 |                   | [17"X22"(ANSI C)]                        |              |             |
|                 |                   | [13"X19"(Super B)]                       |              |             |
|                 |                   | [11"X17"(Ledger)]                        |              |             |
|                 |                   | [Letter (8.5"X11")]                      |              |             |

| First Level | Second Level       | Third Level                           | Fourth Level | Fifth Level |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Media Menu] | [Cas Paper Size]   | [Legal (8.5"X14")]                    |              |             |
|             |                    | [24"X36"(ARCH D)]                     |              |             |
|             |                    | [18"X24"(ARCH C)]                     |              |             |
|             |                    | [12"X18"(ARCH B)]                     |              |             |
|             |                    | [9"X12"(ARCH A)]                      |              |             |
|             |                    | [DIN C2]                              |              |             |
|             |                    | [DIN C3]                              |              |             |
|             |                    | [DIN C4]                              |              |             |
|             |                    | [20"x24"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [18"x22"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [14"x17"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [12"x16"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [10"X12"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [10"X15"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [8"X10"]                              |              |             |
|             |                    | [16"x20"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [20"X30"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [13"X22"]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [300X900mm]                           |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A1]                              |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A2+]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A2]                              |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A3+]                             |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A3]                              |              |             |
|             | [Manual PaperType] | [Plain Paper](*5)                     |              |             |
|             |                    | [Plain Paper HQ](*5)                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [Plain Paper HG](*5)                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [All Plain Paper Conserve<br>MBK](*5) |              |             |
|             |                    | [Recycled Coated](*5)                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [Coated Paper](*5)                    |              |             |
|             |                    | [HW Coated](*5)                       |              |             |
|             |                    | [Ex HW Coated](*5)                    |              |             |
|             |                    | [Premium MatteP](*5)                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [Glossy Photo](*5)                    |              |             |
|             |                    | [Glossy Photo2](*5)                   |              |             |
|             |                    | [Semi-Gl Photo](*5)                   |              |             |
|             |                    | [Semi-Gl Photo2](*5)                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [HW Glossy Photo]                     |              |             |
|             |                    | [HW SemiGl Photo](*5)                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [Syn. Paper](*5)                      |              |             |
|             |                    | [Adh. Syn. Paper](*5)                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [Proofing Paper](*5)                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [News Proof 1](*5)                    |              |             |
|             |                    | [News Proof 2](*5)                    |              |             |
|             |                    | [News Proof 3](*5)                    |              |             |
|             |                    | [Colored Coated](*5)                  |              |             |

=

| First Level | Second Level       | Third Level                               | Fourth Level | Fifth Level |
|-------------|--------------------|---|--------------|-------------|
| Media Menu] | [Manual PaperType] | [CAD Trace Paper](*5)                     |              |             |
|             |                    | [CAD Matte Film](*5)                      |              |             |
|             |                    | [CAD Clear Film](*5)                      |              |             |
|             |                    | Special # Here, the number is 1 to 5 (*5) |              |             |
|             | [Manual PaperSize] | [ISO A4]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO B2]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO B3]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO B4]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [JIS B2]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [JIS B3]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [JIS B4]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [22"x34"(ANSI D)]                         |              |             |
|             |                    | [17"x22"(ANSI C)]                         |              |             |
|             |                    | [13"x19"(Super B)]                        |              |             |
|             |                    | [11"x17"(Ledger)]                         |              |             |
|             |                    | [Letter(8.5"x11")]                        |              |             |
|             |                    | [Legal(8.5"x14")]                         |              |             |
|             |                    | [24"x36"(ARCH D)]                         |              |             |
|             |                    | [18"x24"(ARCH C)]                         |              |             |
|             |                    | [12"x18"(ARCH B)]                         |              |             |
|             |                    | [9"x12"(ARCH A)]                          |              |             |
|             |                    | [DIN C2]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [DIN C3]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [DIN C4]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [20"x24"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [18"x22"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [14"x17"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [12"x16"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [10"x12"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [10"x15"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [8"x10"]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [16"x20"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [20"x30"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [13"x22"]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [300x900mm]                               |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A1]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A2+]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A2]                                  |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A3+]                                 |              |             |
|             |                    | [ISO A3]                                  |              |             |

| First Level    | Second Level                 | Third Level                               | Fourth Level | Fifth Level |
|----------------|------------------------------|---|--------------|-------------|
| Media Menu]    | [Roll Media Type](*1)        | [Plain Paper](*5)                         |              |             |
|                |                              | [Plain Paper HQ](*5)                      |              |             |
|                |                              | [Plain Paper HG](*5)                      |              |             |
|                |                              | [All Plain Paper Conserve<br>MBK](*5)     |              |             |
|                |                              | [Recycled Coated](*5)                     |              |             |
|                |                              | [Coated Paper](*5)                        | -            |             |
|                |                              | [HW Coated](*5)                           |              |             |
|                |                              | [Ex HW Coated](*5)                        |              |             |
|                |                              | [Premium MatteP](*5)                      | 1            |             |
|                |                              | [Glossy Photo](*5)                        |              |             |
|                |                              | [Glossy Photo2](*5)                       |              |             |
|                |                              | [Semi-Gl Photo](*5)                       |              |             |
|                |                              | [Semi-Gl Photo2](*5)                      |              |             |
|                |                              | [HW Glossy Photo](*5)                     |              |             |
|                |                              | [HW SemiGl Photo](*5)                     |              |             |
|                |                              | [Syn. Paper](*5)                          |              |             |
|                |                              | [Adh. Syn. Paper](*5)                     |              |             |
|                |                              | [Proofing Paper](*5)                      |              |             |
|                |                              | [News Proof 1](*5)                        |              |             |
|                |                              | [News Proof 2](*5)                        |              |             |
|                |                              | [News Proof 3](*5)                        |              |             |
|                |                              | [Colored Coated](*5)                      |              |             |
|                |                              | [CAD Trace Paper](*5)                     |              |             |
|                |                              | [CAD Matte Film](*5)                      | 1            |             |
|                |                              | [CAD Clear Film](*5)                      |              |             |
|                |                              | Special # Here, the number is 1 to 5 (*5) |              |             |
|                | [Chk Remain.Roll]            | [Of]*                                     |              |             |
|                |                              | [On]                                      | 1            |             |
|                | [Roll Length Set](*1, *2)    | [### m]                                   |              |             |
|                |                              | [### feet](*9)                            | 1            |             |
| Paper Details] | (The paper type is displayed | [Roll DryingTime]                         | [Off]        |             |
|                | here.) (*5)                  |   | [30 sec.]    |             |
|                |                              |   | [1 min.]     |             |
|                |                              |   | [3min.]      |             |
|                |                              |   | [5min.]      |             |
|                |                              |   | [10min.]     |             |
|                |                              |   | [30min.]     |             |
|                |                              |   | [60min.]     |             |
|                |                              | [Scan Wait Time]                          | [Off]        |             |
|                |                              |   | [1 sec.]     |             |
|                |                              |   | [3sec.]      |             |
|                |                              |   | [5sec.]      |             |
|                |                              |   | [7sec.]      |             |
|                |                              |   | [9sec.]      |             |

T-1-6

| First Level    | Second Level                 | Third Level               | Fourth Level     | Fifth Level |
|----------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Paper Details] | (The paper type is displayed | [Feed Priority]           | [Automatic]*     |             |
|                | here.) (*5)                  |                           | [Band Joint]     |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Print Length]   |             |
|                |                              | [Adjust Length]           | -0.70 to 0.70    |             |
|                |                              | [Head Height]             | [Automatic]*     |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Highest]        |             |
|                |                              |                           | [High]           |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Standard]       |             |
|                |                              |                           | [LowLow]         |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Lowest]         |             |
|                |                              | [Skew Check Lv.]          | [High Accuracy]  |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Standard]*      |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Loose]          |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Off]            |             |
|                |                              | [VacuumStrngth]           | [Automatic]*     |             |
|                | [                            | -                         | [Strongest]      |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Strong]         |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Standard]       |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Weak]           |             |
|                | [NearEnd RollMrgn]           |                           | [Weakest]        |             |
|                |                              | [3mm]                     |                  |             |
|                |                              |                           | [20mm]           |             |
|                |                              | [Cut Speed]               | [Fast]           |             |
|                |                              | r                         | [Standard]       |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Slow]           |             |
|                |                              | [Trim Edge First]         | [Automatic]      |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Off]            |             |
|                |                              |                           | [On]             |             |
|                |                              | [Cutting Mode]            | [Automatic]      |             |
|                |                              | [ • • • • • • • • • • • ] | [Eject]          |             |
|                |                              |                           | [Manual]         |             |
|                |                              | [Bordless Margin]         | [Automatic]      |             |
|                |                              | [Bordless magni]          | [Fixed]          |             |
|                |                              | [CutDustReduct.]          | [Off]            |             |
|                |                              | [CutDustreduct.]          | [On]             |             |
|                |                              | [NearEnd Sht Mrgn]        | [3mm]            |             |
|                |                              | [1.tearEnd Ont fright]    | [20mm]           |             |
|                |                              | [Return Defaults]         | [200000]<br>[No] |             |
|                |                              | [Retain Delauno]          | [Yes]            |             |
| 3L2 Settings]  | [GL2 Replot]                 | [No]                      | [100]            |             |
| 512 Settings]  |                              | [No]<br>[Yes]             |                  |             |
|                | [GL2 BufferClear]            | [1es]<br>[No]             | —                |             |
|                | [UL2 BuildrUlear]            |                           |                  |             |
|                | [Color Mode]                 | [Yes]                     |                  |             |
|                | [Color Mode]                 | [Color Mode]*             |                  |             |
|                |                              | [Monochrome]              |                  |             |

| First Level      | Second Level        | Third Level       | Fourth Level | Fifth Level |
|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| [GL2 Settings]   | [Print Quality]     | [Draft]           |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Standard]*       |              |             |
|                  |                     | [High]            |              |             |
|                  | [Input Resolution]  | [600dpi]*         |              |             |
|                  |                     | [300dpi]          |              |             |
|                  | [Media Source]      | [Roll Paper]*     |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Cassette]        |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Manual]          |              |             |
|                  | [Conserve Paper]    | [Off]             |              |             |
|                  |                     | [On]*             |              |             |
|                  | [End Point Shape]   | [Software]*       |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Rounded]         |              |             |
|                  | [Smoothing]         | [Software]*       |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Smooth]          |              |             |
|                  | [Line Width]        | [1dot]            |              |             |
|                  |                     | [2dot]            |              |             |
|                  |                     | [3dot]            |              |             |
|                  |                     | [4dot]*           |              |             |
|                  |                     | [5dot]            |              |             |
|                  |                     | [6dot]            |              |             |
|                  |                     | [7dot]            |              |             |
| [Adjust Printer] | [Auto Head Adj.]    | [Standard Adj.]   | [No]         |             |
|                  |                     |                   | [Yes]        |             |
|                  |                     | [Advanced Adj.]   | [No]         |             |
|                  |                     |                   | [Yes]        |             |
|                  |                     | [Auto Print]      | [Off]        |             |
|                  |                     |                   | [On]*        |             |
|                  | [Manual Head Adj]   | [No]              |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Yes]             |              |             |
|                  | [Auto Band Adj.]    | [Standard Adj.]   | [No]         |             |
|                  |                     |                   | [Yes]        |             |
|                  |                     | [Advanced Adj.]   | [No]         |             |
|                  |                     |                   | [Yes]        |             |
|                  | [Manual Band Adj]   | [No]              |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Yes]             |              |             |
|                  | [Adj Far Ed Feed]   | [No]              |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Yes]             |              |             |
|                  | [Adjust Length](*3) | [No]              |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Yes]             |              |             |
|                  |                     | [Return Defaults] | [No]         |             |
|                  |                     |                   | [Yes]        |             |

T-1-8

\_

| T-1-9 |
|-------|
|-------|

| First Level      | Second Level      | Third Level         | Fourth Level      | Fifth Level                 |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| interface Setup] | [EOP Timer]       | [10 sec.]           |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [30 sec.]           |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [1 min.]            |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [2 min.]            |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [5 min.]            |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [10 min.]*          |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [30 min.]           |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [60 min.]           |                   |                             |
|                  | [TCP/IP]          | [IP Mode]           | [Automatic]       |                             |
|                  | [ICI/II]          | [II Mode]           | [Manual]*         |                             |
|                  |                   | [Drotocol](*4)      |                   | [ <b>O</b> n]               |
|                  |                   | [Protocol](*4)      | [DHCP]            | [On]                        |
|                  |                   |                     | (0.0.070)         | [Off]*                      |
|                  |                   |                     | [BOOTP]           | [On]                        |
|                  |                   |                     |                   | [Off]*                      |
|                  |                   |                     | [RARP]            | [On]                        |
|                  |                   |                     |                   | [Off]*                      |
|                  |                   | [IP Setting]        | [IP Address]      | 0.0.0.0* to 255.255.255.255 |
|                  |                   |                     | [Subnet Mask]     | 0.0.0.0* to 255.255.255.255 |
|                  |                   |                     | [Default G/W]     | 0.0.0.0* to 255.255.255.25  |
|                  | [NetWare]         | [NetWare]           | [On]              |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Off]*            |                             |
|                  |                   | [Frame Type](*6)    | [Auto Detect]     |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Ethernet 2]      |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Ethernet 802.2]* |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Ethernet 802.3]  |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Ethernet SNAP]   |                             |
|                  |                   | [Print Service](*6) |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [Print Service](*0) | [BinderyPServer]  |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [RPrinter]        |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [NDSPServer]*     |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [NPrinter]        |                             |
|                  | [AppleTalk]       | [On]                |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [Off]*              |                   |                             |
|                  | [Ethernet Driver] | [Auto Detect]       | [On*              |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Off]             |                             |
|                  |                   | [Comm.Mode](*7)     | [Half Duplex]*    |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Full Duplex]     |                             |
|                  |                   | [Ethernet Type](*7) | [10 Base-T]*      |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [100 Base-TX]     |                             |
|                  |                   | [Spanning Tree]     | [Not Use]*        |                             |
|                  |                   |                     | [Use]             |                             |
|                  |                   | [MAC Address]       | L                 |                             |
|                  | [Ext.Interface]   | [No]                |                   | —                           |
|                  | [Landinicertueo]  | [IEEE1394]          |                   |                             |
|                  | [Init Sottings]   |                     |                   |                             |
|                  | [Init. Settings]  | [No]                |                   |                             |
|                  |                   | [Yes]               |                   |                             |

| First Level   | Second Level        | Third Level        | Fourth Level       | Fifth Level |
|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| Maintenance]  | [Maint. cart.]      | [No]               |                    |             |
|               |                     | [Yes]              |                    |             |
|               | [Replace P.head]    | [No]               |                    |             |
|               |                     | [Yes]              |                    |             |
|               | [Move Printer]      | [No]               |                    |             |
|               |                     | [Yes]              |                    |             |
|               | [Clean Roller]      | [No]               |                    |             |
|               |                     | [Yes]              |                    |             |
|               | [Clean Platen]      | [No]               |                    |             |
|               |                     | [Yes]              |                    |             |
| System Setup] | [Warning]           | [Buzzer]           | [Off]              |             |
|               |                     |                    | [On]*              |             |
|               |                     | [Detect Mismatch]  | [Pause]            |             |
|               |                     |                    | [Warning]          |             |
|               |                     |                    | [None]*            |             |
|               | [Keep Media Size]   | [Off]*             |                    |             |
|               |                     | [On]               |                    |             |
|               | [Paper Size Basis]  | [Sht Selection]    | [ISO A3+]*         |             |
|               |                     |                    | [13"x19"(Super B)] |             |
|               |                     | [Roll Selection 1] | [IS0 A3 (297mm)]   |             |
|               |                     | r                  | [300mm Roll]       |             |
|               |                     | [Roll Selection 2] | [10INCH (254mm)]   |             |
|               |                     | r                  | [JIS B4 (257mm)]   |             |
|               | [TrimEdge Reload]   | [Automatic]        |                    |             |
|               |                     | [Off]*             |                    |             |
|               |                     | [On]               |                    |             |
|               | [Noz. Check Freq.]  | [Off]              |                    |             |
|               | [rtobi check rieq.] | [1 page]           |                    |             |
|               |                     | [10 pages]         |                    |             |
|               |                     | [Automatic]*       |                    |             |
|               | [Sleep Timer]       | [5 min.]*          |                    |             |
|               | [Sicep Time]        | [10 min.]          |                    |             |
|               |                     | [15 min.]          |                    |             |
|               |                     | [10 min.]          |                    |             |
|               |                     |                    |                    |             |
|               |                     | [30 min.]          | <u> </u>           |             |
|               |                     | [40 min.]          |                    |             |
|               |                     | [50 min.]          |                    |             |
|               |                     | [60 min.]          |                    |             |
|               | n an                | [240 min.]         |                    |             |
|               | [Length Unit]       | [meter]*           |                    |             |
|               |                     | [feet/inch]        |                    |             |

T-1-10

| First Level   | Second Level       | Third Level          | Fourth Level      | Fifth Level |
|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| System Setup] | [Time Zone]        | [0: London (GMT)]    |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+1: Paris, Rome]    |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+2: Athens, Cairo]  |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+3: Moscow]         |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+4: Eerenan, Baku]  |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+5: Islamabad]      |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+6: Dacca]          |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+7: Bangkok]        |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+8: Hong Kong]      |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+9: Tokyo, Seoul]   |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+10: Canberra]      |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+11: NewCaledonia]  |                   |             |
|               |                    | [+12: Wellington]    |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-12: Eniwetok]      |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-11: Midway is]     |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-10: Hawaii (AHST)] |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-9: Alaska (AKST)]  |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-8: Oregon (PST)]   |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-7: Arizona (MST)]  |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-6: Texas (CST)]    |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-5: NewYork (EST)]  |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-4: Santiago]       |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-3: Buenos Aires]   |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-2:]                |                   |             |
|               |                    | [-1: Cape Verde]     |                   |             |
|               | [Date Format]      | [yyyy/mm/dd]*        |                   |             |
|               |                    | [dd/mm/yyyy]         |                   |             |
|               |                    | [mm/dd/yyyy]         |                   |             |
|               | [Date & Time]      | [Date]               | [yyyy/mm/dd] (*8) |             |
|               |                    | [Time]               | [hh: mm]          |             |
|               | [Language]         | [Japanese]*          |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Francais]           |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Italiano]           |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Deutsch]            |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Espanol]            |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Pyccknn]            |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Chinese]            |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Korea]              |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Engulish]           |                   |             |
|               | [Contrast Adj.]    | -4 to 4              | —                 |             |
|               | [Reset PaprSetngs] | [No]                 |                   |             |
|               |                    | [Yes]                |                   |             |

| First Level  | Second Level    | Third Level  | Fourth Level       | Fifth Level |
|--------------|-----------------|--|--------------------|-------------|
| [Test Print] | [Status Print]  | [No]   |                    |             |
|              |                 | [Yes]  |                    |             |
|              | [Media Details] | [No]   | _                  |             |
|              |                 | [Yes]  | _                  |             |
|              | [Print Job Log] | [No]   |                    |             |
|              |                 | [Yes]  |                    |             |
|              | [Menu Map]      | [No]   |                    |             |
|              |                 | [Yes]  |                    |             |
|              | [Nozzle Check]  | [No]   |                    |             |
|              |                 | [Yes]  |                    |             |
| Information] | [System Info]   |  |                    |             |
|              | [Error Log]     | [########]   |                    |             |
|              | [Job Log]       | (Choose from information<br>about the latest three print<br>jobs.) | [Document Name]    |             |
|              |                 |  | [User Name]        |             |
|              |                 |  | [Page Count]       |             |
|              |                 |  | [Job Status]       |             |
|              |                 |  | [Print Start Time] |             |
|              |                 |  | [Print End Time]   |             |
|              |                 |  | [Print Time]       |             |
|              |                 |  | [Print Size]       |             |
|              |                 |  | [Media Type]       |             |
|              |                 |  | [Interface]        |             |
|              |                 |  | [Ink Consumed]     |             |

\*1: Displayed if a roll is loaded.
\*2: Displayed if Chk Remain.Roll is On.
\*3: Displayed if IP Mode is Automatic.
\*4: Displayed if IP Mode is Automatic.
\*5: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Media Guide. The media type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel is updated when you install Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using Media Configuration Tool.
\*6: Available only if NetWare is On.
\*7: Available only if Auto Detect is Off.
\*8: Follows the setting in Date Format.
\*9: Not displayed if a roll or a sheet has been fed.

1-32

**3. Main menu during printing** The structure of the main menu during printing is as follows.

T-1-13

| First Level        | Second Level     | Third Level       | Fourth Level                        | Fifth Level        |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| [Menu Durng Prtng] | [Head Cleaning]  | [Head Cleaning A] |                                     |                    |
|                    |                  | [Head Cleaning B] |                                     |                    |
|                    | [Fine Band Adj.] | -5 to 5           |                                     |                    |
|                    | [Information]    | [System Info]     |                                     |                    |
|                    |                  | [Error Log]       | [########=####]                     |                    |
|                    |                  | [Job Log]         | (Choose from information            | [Document Name]    |
|                    |                  |                   | about the latest three print jobs.) | [User Name]        |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Page Count]       |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Job Status]       |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Print Start Time] |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Print End Time]   |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Print Time]       |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Print Size]       |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Media Type]       |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Interface]        |
|                    |                  |                   |                                     | [Ink Consumed]     |

**4. Main Menu Settings** Main menu items are described in the following tables.

T-1-14

| Setting Item      | Description, Instructions  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| [Paper Cut]       | Displayed if a roll is loaded.<br>Choose Yes to cut the roll at the current position. The paper will be fed, if necessary, so that the sheet is at<br>least 10 cm (39.4 in.)long after the cut. The paper will not be cut if there is not enough paper left to feed the<br>paper this much.  |  |
| [Rep. Ink Tank]   | When exchanging the ink tank, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen.  |  |
| [Head Cleaning]   | Specify Printhead cleaning options.<br>Choose Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.<br>Choose Head Cleaning B if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by Head Cleaning A.   |  |
| [Paper Settings]  | Specify the type and size of paper.  |  |
| [Paper Details]   | Specify detailed paper-related settings, including the ink drying time and borderless printing options.  |  |
| [GL2 Settings]    | Make settings for making prints using GL2.   |  |
| [Adjust Printer]  | Adjust the Printhead alignment or amount of feed by printing a test pattern.   |  |
| [Interface Setup] | Configure the network settings.  |  |
| [Maintenance]     | Replace the Printhead, prepare to transfer the printer, and clean the Pick Up Roller.  |  |
| [System Setup]    | Specify the printer system settings, including the date format and display language.   |  |
| [Test Print]      | Choose Status Print to print information about the printer.<br>Choose Media Details to print the paper settings as specified in Med.Detail Set<br>Choose Print Job Log to print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink used,<br>and so on.<br>Choose Menu Map to print a list of the main menu options.<br>Choose Nozzle Check to print a test pattern for checking the nozzles.<br>If you have selected a leading edge margin of 20 mm in Nr End Sht Mrgn in the printer menu, the test print<br>sheet may not be printed completely. |  |
| [Information]     | Displays the information about the printer and history of print jobs.  |  |

# [Paper Settings]

T-1-15

| Setting Item       | Description, Instructions   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| [Cas Paper Type]   | Choose the type of paper in the Cassette .  |  |
| [Manual PaperType] | Chose the type of manual feed paper.  |  |
| [Manual PaperSize] | Choose the size of manual feed paper.   |  |
| [Roll Media Type]  | Choose the type of roll.  |  |
| [Chk Remain.Roll]  | Choose On to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose Off if you prefer not to print the barcode.                       |  |
| [Roll Length Set]  | Displayed if Chk Remain.Roll is On .<br>If a barcode is not printed on rolls, specify the roll length. The roll length is displayed in meters (1.0 - 9) m) or feet (1 - 300 ft.), depending on the setting in Length Unit . |  |

# Chapter 1

### [Paper Details]

| Setting Item                        |                    | Description, Instructions  |  |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|--|--|
| (The paper type is displayed here.) | [Roll DryingTime]  | Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.  |  |
|                                     | [Scan Wait Time]   | Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan in bidirectional printing<br>in consideration of how quickly the paper absorbs ink. Note that printing will take<br>longer if you specify a wait time.   |  |
|                                     | [Feed Priority]    | Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select Automatic . Choose Print<br>Length if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that choosing<br>Print Length may result in slight banding in the direction of Carriage scanning.  |  |
|                                     | [Adjust Length]    | Displayed if Feed Priority is Print Length .<br>Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper.<br>For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by setting the adjustment<br>value toward +. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by setting<br>the adjustment value toward<br>The setting for the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage is relative. If you access<br>it again later, it will be displayed as 0.00 %.   |  |
|                                     | [Head Height]      | Adjust the Printhead height.   |  |
|                                     | [Skew Check Lv.]   | If you print on Japanese Paper Washi or other handmade paper that has an irregula width, choose Loose for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose Off to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is Off, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.<br>If strict skew detection is required, choose High Accuracy.  |  |
|                                     | [VacuumStrngth]    | Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen .   |  |
|                                     | [NearEnd RollMrgn] | Specify a margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality a the leading edge.<br>Note that if you choose 3 mm, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the the leading edge.   |  |
|                                     | [Cut Speed]        | Choose the cutting speed. For media such as film that are more likely to generate debris when cut, choose Fast to reduce the amount of debris.   |  |
|                                     | [Trim Edge First]  | If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut.<br>Choose Forced to have 40 mm (1.6 in) cut off the leading edge of the roll, ensuring<br>a straight edge, after you load the roll. Scraps are then removed.<br>When Automatic is selected, if the left and right side of the leading edge of the rol<br>are uneven (by 3 mm [0.12 in] or more), the edge is cut an amount relative to the<br>slant to ensure a straight edge after you load the roll. Scraps are then removed.<br>If the unevenness is less than 3 mm or if No Cutting is selected, the edge is not cut<br>and scraps are not removed. |  |
|                                     | [Cutting Mode]     | Specify if the Cutter Unit is used for cutting.<br>Choose Automatic to have roll paper cut automatically after printing. If you choose<br>Eject, the paper will not be cut after printing. Instead, a line will be printed at the<br>cut position.   |  |
|                                     | [Bordless Margin]  | Adjust the margin during borderless printing.  |  |
|                                     | [CutDustReduct.]   | Choose On to reduce the amount of debris generated when cutting film and simila<br>media by printing a line at the cut position. This option reduces the amount of debris<br>given off after cutting.  |  |
|                                     | [Manual Feed]      | Choose how the paper is supplied, Top for printing from the Tray or Front for printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot .  |  |
|                                     | [NearEnd Sht Mrgn] | Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the<br>leading edge.<br>Note that if you choose 3 mm, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge<br>and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may<br>adhere to the the leading edge.<br>If you have selected 20 mm, the test print sheet may not be printed completely.  |  |
|                                     | [Return Defaults]  | Choose Yes to restore Med.Detail Set. to the factory default values.   |  |

# [GL2 Settings]

T-1-17

| Setting Item       | Description, Instructions  |  |
|--------------------|--|--|
| [GL2 Replot]       | Reprint the last printed page stored in the printer.                                 |  |
| [GL2 BufferClear]  | Delete the last printed page stored in the printer.                                  |  |
| [Color Mode]       | Choose the color mode.   |  |
| [Print Quality]    | Choose the print quality.  |  |
| [Input Resolution] | Select [600dpi] or [300dpi] as the print resolution.                                 |  |
| [Media Source]     | Select the method of feeding paper when using the HP-GL/2 for printing.              |  |
| [Conserve Paper]   | Print using paper sparingly.   |  |
| [End Point Shape]  | Select [Software] or [Round] as the shape of the line end.                           |  |
| [Smoothing]        | Select whether to print an arc with a smooth curve or polygon.                       |  |
| [Line Width]       | Select the printing line width for the data for which a line width is not specified. |  |

# [Adjust Printer]

### T-1-18

=

| Setting Item       |                 | Description, Instructions  |  |
|--------------------|-----------------|--|--|
| [Auto Head Adj.]   | [Standard Adj.] | Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic<br>adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction.  |  |
|                    | [Advanced Adj.] | Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic<br>adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the nozzle, ink tank, and printing<br>direction.<br>Three sheets are required when printing on sheets.   |  |
|                    | [Auto Print]    | Choose On to have the printer automatically execute the Advanced Adj. operations after you replace the Printhead .   |  |
| [Manual Head Adj]  |                 | Choose Yes to print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern.   |  |
| [Auto Band Adj.]   | [Standard Adj.] | Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a test pattern for band adjustment,<br>based on which the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount.   |  |
|                    | [Advanced Adj.] | Choose this option when using paper other than genuine Canon paper, or paper for<br>purposes other than checking output.<br>Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a test pattern for band adjustment,<br>based on which the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount. Note that this<br>function takes more time and requires more ink than Standard Adj.<br>Two sheets are required when printing on sheets. |  |
| [Manual Band Adj]  |                 | Choose Yes to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount based on the paper type.<br>Two sheets are required when printing on sheets.  |  |
| [Adj Far Ed Feed]  |                 | [Choose Yes to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount of the trailing edge of paper based on the paper type.   |  |
| [Adjust Length]    |                 | Choose Yes to print a test pattern for adjustment relative to paper stretching or<br>shrinkage, after which you can enter the amount of adjustment.  |  |
| [Adjust Head Skew] |                 | Selecting [Yes] will print the pattern for adjusting the print head inclination.   |  |

# [Interface Setup]

T-1-19

| Setting Item      |                 |               | Description, Instructions  |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|--|
| [EOP Timer]       |                 |               | Specify the timeout period for print jobs.   |
| [TCP/IP]          | [TCP/IP]        |               | Specify the TCP/IP protocol settings. To apply your changes, choose Store Setting.   |
|                   | [IP Mode]       |               | Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP<br>address is entered manually.   |
|                   | [Protocol]      | [DHCP]        | Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.   |
|                   |                 | [BOOTP]       |  |
|                   |                 | [RARP]        |  |
|                   | [IP Setting]    | [IP Address]  | Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address.  |
|                   |                 | [Subnet Mask] | Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask<br>and default gateway.   |
|                   |                 | [Default G/W] | and default galeway.   |
| [NetWare]         | [NetWare]       |               | Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose Store Setting .  |
|                   | [Frame Type]    |               | Specify the frame type to use.   |
|                   | [Print Service] |               | Choose the print service.  |
| [AppleTalk]       |                 |               | Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose<br>Store Setting .  |
| [Ethernet Driver] | [Auto Detect]   |               | Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose Store<br>Setting .<br>Choose On for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol.<br>Choose Off to use settings values of Comm.Mode and Ethernet Type . |
|                   | [Comm.Mode]     |               | Choose the LAN communication method.   |
|                   | [Ethernet Type] |               | Choose the LAN transfer rate.  |
|                   | [Spanning Tree] |               | Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.   |
|                   | [MAC Address]   |               | Displays the MAC address.  |
| [Ext.Interface]   |                 |               | When installing the expansion interface board, choose whether the expansion<br>interface board is used.  |
| [Init. Settings]  |                 |               | A confirmation message is displayed if you press the [V] button. Choose [OK] to restore the network settings to the default values.  |

#### [Maintenance]

| ٦ | Г-1 | -2 | 0 |
|---|-----|----|---|
|   |     |    |   |

| Setting Item       | Description, Instructions  |
|--------------------|--|
| [Maint. cart.]     | When exchanging the maintenance cartridge, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen.   |
| [Replace P.head]   | Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.<br>When replacing the Printhead, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen.                      |
| [Repl. S. Cleaner] | When replacing the shaft cleaner, select [Yes] and take appropriate actions according to the instructions shown on the screen.   |
| [Change Cutter]    | When replacing the cutter unit, select [Yes] and take appropriate actions according to the instructions shown<br>on the screen. Replacing the cutter unit will reset the cut count.                          |
| [Move Printer]     | Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.<br>When transferring the printer to another location, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen. |
| [Clean Roller]     | Use this function to clean inside the Top Cover . After you select Yes , the Carriage is moved in preparation for Feed Roller cleaning.  |
| [Clean Platen]     | Use this function to clean inside the Top Cover . After you select Yes , the Carriage is moved in preparation for Platen cleaning.   |

# [System Setup]

T-1-21

| Setting Item       |                    | Description, Instructions  |  |
|--------------------|--------------------|--|--|
| [Warning]          | [Buzzer]           | Set the buzzer. Choose On for the buzzer to sound in case of errors.   |  |
|                    | [Detect Mismatch]  | Choose Warning for notification (display of a warning message) during printing if<br>the paper type specified in the printer menu does not match the paper type in the<br>printer driver. Choose None to continue print without notification. Choose Pause to<br>have printing paused under these circumstances. In this case, you can continue<br>printing by pressing the Online button.   |  |
| [Keep Media Size]  |                    | Choose On to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed. Choose Off to use the printer driver settings instead. Even if the margin setting of the printer driver is smaller than that of the printer driver, text or images will not be cut off. However, this requires longer paper because the actual margin will be equal to the margin setting of the printer driver plus the margin setting of the printer menu. |  |
| [Paper Size Basis] | [Sht Selection]    | If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether ISO A3+ or ANSI B Super is applied when an inbetween size is detected.  |  |
|                    | [Roll Selection 1] | If roll size detection is activated, choose whether ISO A3 (297 mm) and 300 mm<br>Roll is applied when an inbetween size is detected.  |  |
|                    | [Roll Selection 2] | If roll size detection is activated, choose whether 10in. (254 mm) or JIS B4 (257 mm) is applied when an inbetween size is detected.   |  |
| [TrimEdge Reload]  |                    | Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge.<br>When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting this option to On so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.   |  |
| [Noz. Check Freq.] |                    | Specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose Off to disable checking. Choose 1 page to check after each page is printed. Choose 10 pages to check once after every ten pages are printed.  |  |
| [Sleep Timer]      |                    | Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.   |  |
| [Length Unit]      |                    | Choose the unit of measurement when roll length is displayed. You can switch the<br>unit displayed for Roll Length Set and the remaining paper amount displayed in the<br>submenu.   |  |
| [Time Zone]        |                    | Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.   |  |
| [Date Format]      |                    | Specify the date format.   |  |
| [Date & Time]      | [Date]             | Set the current date.  |  |
|                    | [Time]             | Set the current time.  |  |
| [Language]         |                    | Specify the language used on the Display Screen.   |  |
| [Contrast Adj.]    |                    | Adjust the contrast of the Display Screen.   |  |
| [Reset PaprSetngs] |                    | Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the<br>factory default values.  |  |

### [Information]

### T-1-22

=

| Setting Item  |                                     |                    | Description, Instructions                                |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|--|
| [System Info] | [Version]                           | [Firmware]         | Displays the version of the printer and firmware.        |
|               |                                     | [Boot]             | Displays the Boot ROM version of the printer.            |
|               |                                     | [MIT]              | Displays the DB format version of the MIT.               |
|               | [s/n:]                              |                    | Displays the printer serial number.                      |
|               | [MAC]                               |                    | Displays the MAC address of the printer.                 |
|               | [IP:]                               |                    | Displays the printer IP address.                         |
| [Error Log]   | [########=####]                     |                    | Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).     |
| [Job Log]     | (Choose from information            | [Document Name]    | Displays the document name in the last print job.        |
|               | about the latest three print jobs.) | [User Name]        | Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.    |
|               | J00s.)                              | [Page Count]       | Displays the number of pages in the print job.           |
|               |                                     | [Job Status]       | Displays the results of the print job processed.         |
|               |                                     | [Print Start Time] | Displays the time when the print job was started.        |
|               |                                     | [Print End Time]   | Displays the time when the print job was finished.       |
|               |                                     | [Print Time]       | Displays the time required to print the job.             |
|               |                                     | [Print Size]       | Displays the paper size in the print job.                |
|               |                                     | [Media Type]       | Displays the paper type in the print job.                |
|               |                                     | [Interface]        | Displays the interface used for the print job.           |
|               |                                     | [Ink Consumed]     | Displays the ink density of each color in the print job. |

**5. Main Menu Settings (During Printing)** Main menu items during printing are described in the following tables.

T-1-23

| Setting Item     | Description, Instructions  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| [Head Cleaning]  | Specify Printhead cleaning options.<br>Choose Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.<br>Choose Head Cleaning B if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by Head Cleaning A. |  |
| [Fine Band Adj.] | Displayed during print jobs. Fine-tune the feed amount manually.   |  |
| [Information]    | Displays the information about the printer and history of print jobs.  |  |

### [Information]

T-1-24

| Setting Item  |  |                    | Description, Instructions                                |  |
|---------------|--|--------------------|--|--|
| [System Info] | [Version]  | [Firmware]         | Displays the version of the printer and firmware.        |  |
|               |  | [Boot]             | Displays the Boot ROM version of the printer.            |  |
|               |  | [MIT]              | Displays the DB format version of the MIT.               |  |
|               | [Ext.Interface]  |                    | Identifies boards in the expansion slot.                 |  |
|               | [s/n:]   |                    | Displays the printer serial number.                      |  |
|               | [MAC]  |                    | Displays the MAC address of the printer.                 |  |
| 1             | [IP:]  |                    | Displays the printer IP address.                         |  |
| [Error Log]   | [###########]  |                    | Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).     |  |
| [Job Log]     | (Choose from information<br>about the latest three print<br>jobs.) | [Document Name]    | Displays the document name in the last print job.        |  |
|               |  | [User Name]        | Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.    |  |
|               |  | [Page Count]       | Displays the number of pages in the print job.           |  |
|               |  | [Job Status]       | Displays the results of the print job processed.         |  |
|               |  | [Print Start Time] | Displays the time when the print job was started.        |  |
|               |  | [Print End Time]   | Displays the time when the print job was finished.       |  |
|               |  | [Print Time]       | Displays the time required to print the job.             |  |
|               |  | [Print Size]       | Displays the paper size in the print job.                |  |
|               |  | [Media Type]       | Displays the paper type in the print job.                |  |
|               |  | [Interface]        | Displays the interface used for the print job.           |  |
|               |  | [Ink Consumed]     | Displays the ink density of each color in the print job. |  |

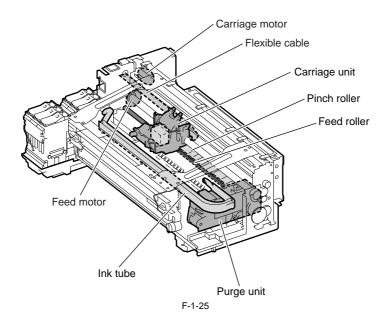
# **1.7 Safety and Precautions**

### 1.7.1 Safety Precautions

## 1.7.1.1 Moving Parts

Moving parts of the printer include the carriage unit driven by the carriage motor, the carriage belt, the ink tube, the flexible cable, the feed roller drives the feed motor, the pinch roller, and the purge unit driven by the purge motor. To prevent accidents, the top cover of the printer is locked during printing. If the top cover is opened in the online/offline mode, the carriage motor, feed motor,

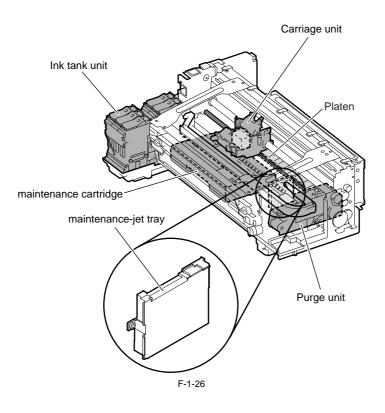
and other driving power supplies are turned off.



#### 1.7.1.2 Adhesion of Ink

#### (1) Ink passages

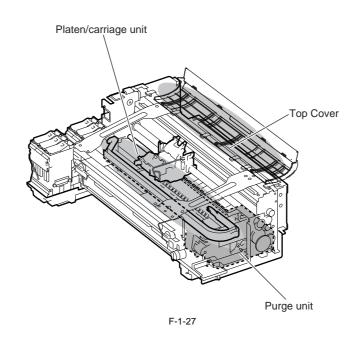
Be careful not to touch the ink passages of the printer to prevent the printer, workbench, ands, and clothes from being stained with ink. The ink flows through the ink tank unit, carriage unit, purge unit, maintenance jet tray, maintenance cartridge, and the ink tubes that relay ink to individual units.



# A

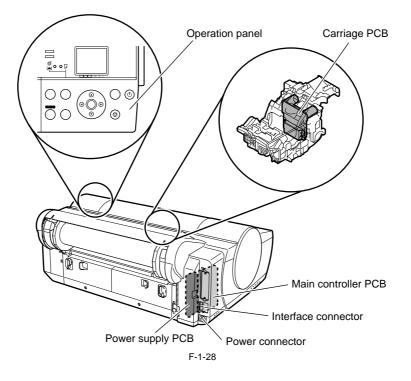
- Although the ink is not harmful to the human body, it contains organic solvents. Ink may contaminate the surrounding parts. Carry out the work with due caution. If your hands are stained with ink, wash them with a plenty of water.
- Be careful not to allow the ink to get into your mouth or eyes. If the ink gets into your eyes, flush them with water well and see a doctor.
- In case of accidental ingestion of a large quantity of ink, see a doctor immediately.
- It is also effective to use gloves to prevent ink from adhering when working.
- Since this ink contains pigment, stains will not come out of clothing.
- (2) Ink Mist

Since the printhead prints by squirting ink onto the media, a minute amount of ink mist is generated in the printing unit during printing. The generated ink mist is collected in the printer by the airflow. However, uncollected ink mist may stain the platen, carriage unit, exterior, and purge unit. These stains may soil the print media or hands and clothes when servicing the printer. Wipe them off carefully with a soft, well-wrung cloth.



### 1.7.1.3 Electric Parts

The electric parts of the printer are activated when the printer is connected to the AC power supply. At the left rear of the printer are the main controller, power supply, and interface connector. The carriage PCB is incorporated in the carriage unit, and the operation when serving the printer with the cover removed, be extremely careful to avoid electric shock and shorting electrical devices.



## 1.7.2 Other Precautions

#### 1.7.2.1 Printhead

#### 1. How to Handle the Printhead

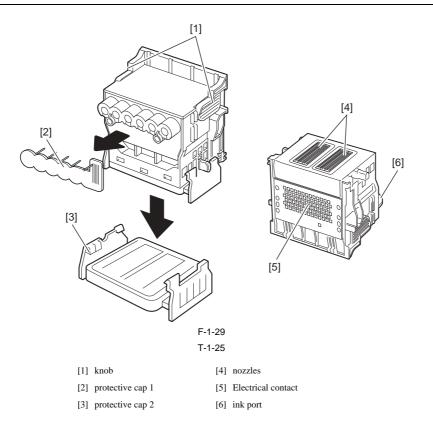
Do not open the printhead package until you are ready to install the head. When installing the printhead in the printer, hold the knob[1] and then remove the protective cap 1[2] and protective cap 2[3] in that order. Do not reattach the protective cap 2[3] to the printhead because the cap may damage the nozzles[4]. To prevent the nozzles from getting clogged with foreign matter or dried ink, install the printhead immediately after you remove the protective caps. Also make sure to press down the locking lever of the printhead until you feel a click.

In addition, to prevent clogging of the nozzles with foreign matter and improper supply of ink, never touch the nozzles[4] or ink port[6], or wipe it with tissue paper or anything else. Do not touch Electriacl contact[5].

Also, never attempt to disassemble/reassemble the printhead or wash it with water.

#### MEMO:

If the nozzles are clogged or an ink suction problem occurs, white lines can appear on the printout a constant frequency or color dulling can occur. If this problem is not resolved by cleaning operations, replace the printhead with a new one.



#### 2. Capping

The printer will perform the capping operation when printing has ended or during standby due to an error, in order to protect the printhead and avoid ink leakage. If the power cord is accidentally unplugged, turn off the Power button, reconnect the power cord, and then turn on the Power button. Confirm that the printer starts up properly and enters to the "Online" or "Offline" status, and then power off the printer using the Power button.

Improper "capping operation" may cause clogged nozzles due to dried ink or ink leakage from the printhead.

#### 3. When the printer is not used for a long time

Keep the printhead installed in the printer even when it is not used for an extended period of time.

If the printhead is left uninstalled, a printing failure may arise from closed nozzles due to depositing of foreign matter or dried ink when it is reinstalled. Even if the head remains installed, the nozzle may dry out and cause a printing failure if the ink is drained for transport.

4. Conductivity of Ink The ink used in this printer is electrically conductive. If ink leaks to into the mechanical unit, wipe clean with a soft, well-wrung damp cloth. If ink leaks onto electrical units, wipe them completely using tissue paper. If you cannot remove ink completely, replace the electrical units with new ones.

If electrical units are powered with ink leaked onto them, the units may damage. Never connect the power cord when ink has leaded onto the electrical units

### 1.7.2.2 Ink Tank

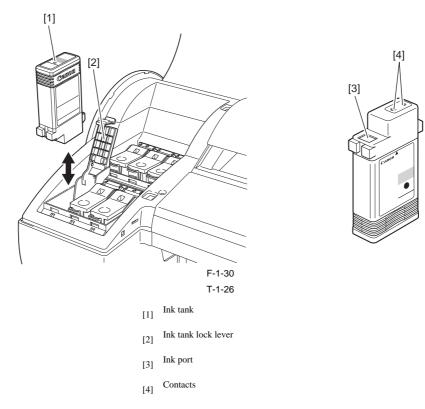
#### 1. Unpacking the Ink Tank

Do not unpack the ink tank until you are ready to install it.

When installing the ink tank, be sure to shake it slowly 7 to 8 times before unpacking it. Otherwise, the ink ingredients may precipitate and degrade the print quality. To prevent foreign matter from entering the ink port, installed the unpacked ink tank in the printer immediately.

#### 2. Handling the Ink Tank

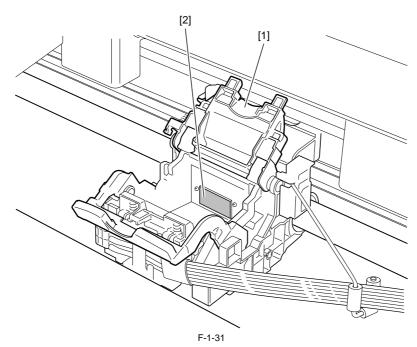
To prevent foreign matter from entering the ink flow path and causing ink suction and printing problems, never touch the ink port and contacts of the ink tank. When you press down the ink tank lock lever, the needle enters the ink port, allowing ink to flow between the printer and ink tank. Do not raise or lower the ink tank lock lever except when replacing the ink tank.



#### 1.7.2.3 Handling the Printer

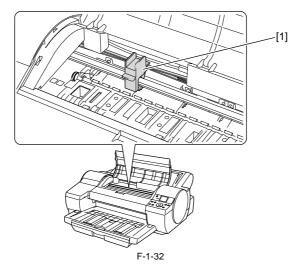
#### 1. Precautions against Static Electricity

Certain clothing may generate static electricity, causing an electrical charge to build up on your body. Such a charge can damage electrical devices or change their electrical characteristics. In particular, never touch the printhead contacts.



[1] Carriage unit[2] Printhead contacts

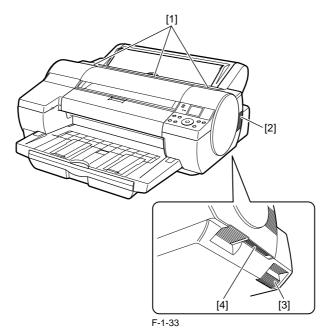
2. Fixing the Carriage After completion of printing, the carriage is mechanically locked by the lock arm in the purge unit at the same moment the printhead is capped. Before transporting the printer, secure the carriage at its home position using belt stoppers[1] so that the carriage does not become separated from the lock arm and damage or ink does not leak.



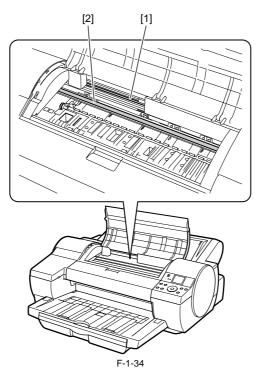
1-45

#### 3. Vent holes

This printer has four vent holes, [1] to [4]. Do not block the vent holes when the printer is in service



**4. Contact of Linear Scale/Carriage Shaft** Please do not touch a linear scale and the carriage shaft when the inside of the top cover is opened, and execute maintenance. When touching a linear scale and the carriage shaft, it might cause defective movement of the carriage and a defective print.



# [1] Linear Scale[2] Carriage Shaft

#### 5. Handling the Maintenance Cartridge

When removing the maintenance cartridge form the printer, use caution so that waste ink does not spatter.

#### 6. Refilling the Printer with Ink

After removing the ink from inside the printer using the automatic or manual ink draining procedure to disassemble/reassemble or transport the printer, refill the printer with ink as soon as possible upon completion of the work. If the ink remaining in the printer dries up, mechanical parts may be seized and malfunction may result.

## **1.7.3 Precautions When Servicing Printer**

#### 1.7.3.1 Notes on the Data Stored in the Printer

This printer counts the print length, number of ink tank replacements, number of cleaning operations, number of cutter operations, and so on and stores them in the main controller's EEPROM as a service mode counter.

This counter provides important information about the printer usage status. You can check this information by printing it in the service mode or displaying it on the display.

Following the precautions below when servicing the printer.

#### (1) Repairing/replacing the PCB

When replacing the main controller, follow the specified replacement procedure.

For the main controller replacement procedure, see "Disassembly/Reassembly" > "Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly" > "Boards".

#### (2) After replacing the purge unit

The information about the number of cleanings arises in the purge unit. After replacing the purge unit, select [INITIALIZE] > [PURGE] in the service mode to initialize (clear) the information about the number of cleanings.

#### (3) On replacement of supplies

Àfter supplies have been replaced, execute [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS xx] in service mode to initialize (clear) the parts counter information. For the consumable parts, see "Maintenance" > "Consumable Parts".



You cannot check the counter information once it is initialized (cleared). Be careful not to initialize the counter information before checking it. You cannot modify the counter information from the operation panel.

#### 1.7.3.2 Confirming the Firmware Version

Firmware has been downloaded to the main controller.

When you have replaced the main controller, check that the firmware is the latest version. If not, update it to the latest version.

#### **Reference:**

For how to up update the main controller, refer to "TROUBLESHOOTING" > "Update".

#### 1.7.3.3 Precautions against Static Electricity

Certain clothing may generate static electricity, causing an electrical charge to build up on your body. Such a charge can damage electrical devices or change their electrical characteristics.

Before disassembling the printer for servicing, discharge any static buildup by touching a grounded metal fitting or the like.

#### 1.7.3.4 Precautions for Disassembly/Reassembly

The precautions for disassembly/reassembly are described in "Disassembly/Reassembly".

#### 1.7.3.5 Self-diagnostic Feature

The printer has a self-diagnostic feature to analyze hardware problems. The self-diagnosis result is shown on the display and indicated by lamps. For detailed information, see "Error Codes".

#### 1.7.3.6 Disposing of the Lithium Battery

The main controller PCB of this printer is equipped with a lithium battery to back up various data.

# A

Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type. Dispose of used batteries according to the instructions.

"For CA, USA Only Included battery contains Perchlorate Material-special handling may apply. See <u>http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/</u> for detail."

#### Achtung:

Die Lithiumbatterie darf nur durch das Originalersatzteil (Parts Katalog) ersetzt werden; ansonsten besteht Brand-/Explosionsgefahr. Lithiumbatterien niemals aufladen, demontieren oder durch Verbrennen entsorgen;

bei der Entsorgung die örtlichen Entsorgungsvorschriften beachten (Schadstoffe; Sondermüll).

# Contents

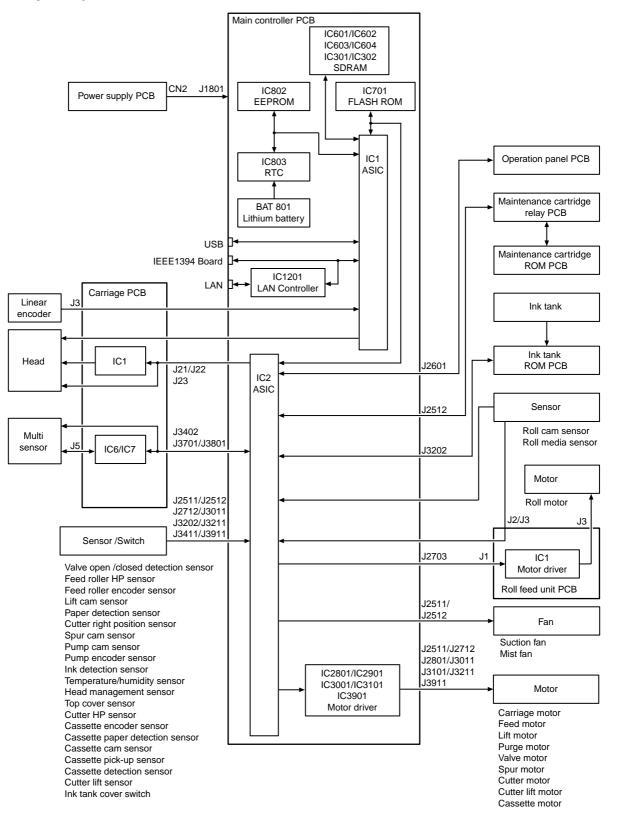
| 2.1 Basic Operation Outline                                      |  |
|--|--|
| 2.1.1 Printer Diagram  |  |
| 2.1.2 Print Signal Sequence                                      |  |
| 2.1.3 Print Driving  |  |
| 2.2 Firmware   |  |
| 2.2.1 Operation Sequence at Power-on                             |  |
| 2.2.2 Operation Sequence at Power-off                            |  |
| 2.2.3 Print Control  |  |
| 2.2.4 Print Position Adjustment Function                         |  |
| 2.2.5 Head Management  |  |
|  |  |
| 2.2.6 Printhead Overheating Protection Control                   |  |
| 2.2.7 Pause between Pages  |  |
| 2.2.8 White Raster Skip  |  |
| 2.2.9 Sleep Mode   |  |
| 2.3 Printer Mechanical System                                    |  |
| 2.3.1 Outline  |  |
| 2.3.1.1 Outline  |  |
| 2.3.2 Ink Passage  |  |
| 2.3.2.1 Ink Passage  |  |
| 2.3.2.1.1 Overview of Ink Passage                                |  |
| 2.3.2.2 Ink Tank Unit  |  |
| 2.3.2.2.1 Structure of Ink Tank Unit                             |  |
| 2.3.2.3 Carriage Unit  |  |
| 2.3.2.3.1 Functions of Carriage Unit                             |  |
| 2.3.2.3.2 Structure of Carriage Unit                             |  |
| 2.3.2.4 Printhead  |  |
| 2.3.2.4.1 Structure of Printhead                                 |  |
| 2.3.2.5 Purge Unit   |  |
| 2.3.2.5.1 Functions of Purge Unit                                |  |
| 2.3.2.5.2 Structure of Purge Unit                                |  |
| 2.3.2.6 Maintenance Cartridge<br>2.3.2.6.1 Maintenance Cartridge |  |
| 2.3.2.7 Air Flow   |  |
| 2.3.2.7 Air flow   |  |
| 2.3.3 Paper Path   |  |
| 2.3.3.1 Outline  |  |
| 2.3.3.1.1 Overview of Paper Path                                 |  |
| 2.3.3.2 Paper Path   |  |
| 2.3.3.2.1 Structure of Cassette Pick-up Unit                     |  |
| 2.3.3.2.2 Cassette Pick-up Sequence                              |  |
| 2.3.3.2.3 Structure of Roll Media Pick-up Unit                   |  |
| 2.3.3.2.4 Roll Media Pick-up Sequence                            |  |
| 2.3.3.2.5 Structure of the Manual Feed Unit                      |  |
| 2.3.3.2.6 Manual Feed (from Front) Sequence                      |  |
| 2.3.3.2.7 Manual Feed (from Rear) Sequence                       |  |
| 2.3.3.2.8 Structure of Feed Roller Unit                          |  |
| 2.3.3.2.9 Feed Roller Eccentricity Detection Function            |  |
| 2.3.3.2.10 Structure of Ejection Sour                            |  |
| 2.3.3.3 Cutter Unit  |  |
| 2.3.3.1 Structure of the cutter unit                             |  |
| 2.4 Printer Electrical System                                    |  |
| 2.4.1 Outline  |  |
| 2.4.1.1 Overview   |  |
|  |  |

|    | 2.4.2 Main Controller  | . 2-47 |
|----|--|--------|
|    | 2.4.2.1 Main controller components         2.4.3 Carriage Relay PCB         2.4.3.1 Carriage PCB components         2.4.4 Motor Driver | 2-47   |
|    | 2.4.3 Carriage Relay PCB   | . 2-48 |
|    | 2.4.3.1 Carriage PCB components  | 2-48   |
|    | 2.4.4 Motor Driver   | . 2-49 |
|    | 2.4.4.1 Roll feed unit PCB components  | 2-49   |
|    | 2.4.5 Maintenance Cartridge Relay PCB  | . 2-49 |
|    | 2.4.5.1 Maintenance cartridge relay PCB components   | 2-49   |
|    | 2.4.6 Power Supply   | . 2-49 |
|    | 2.4.6.1 Power supply block diagram   | 2-49   |
| 2. | 5 Detection Functions with Sensors   | 2-50   |
|    | 2.5.1 Sensors for covers   | . 2-50 |
|    | 2.5.2 Ink passage system   | . 2-51 |
|    | 2.5.2 Ink passage system   | . 2-53 |
|    | 2.5.4 Paper path system  | . 2-54 |
|    | 2.5.5 Others   | . 2-56 |
|    |  |        |

# 2.1 Basic Operation Outline

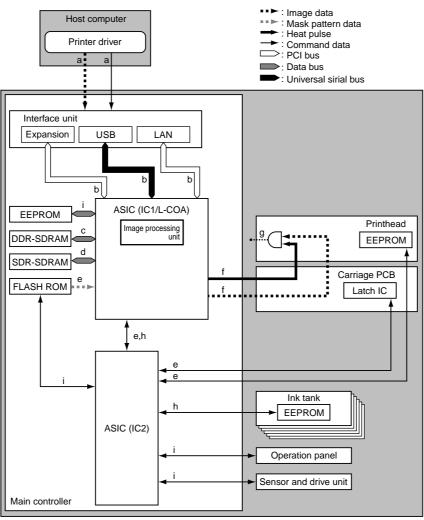
#### 2.1.1 Printer Diagram

Shown below is a printer diagram.



# 2.1.2 Print Signal Sequence

The signal sequence from when the printer receives the print signals until printing starts is shown in Figure.



F-2-2

a) The printer driver on the host computer transmits print data, including command data, to the printer after compressing the image data, without resolution, color and 12-color binarization conversion.

To achieve high-quality image output, the image processing table data used for image data color conversion and binarization conversion are generated as command data to meet the Media Type and other specifications of the printer driver.

b) This printer receives print data from the individual interfaces on the main controller, transmitting the received print data to ASIC (IC1).

c) The main controller decompresses the print data transmitted to the ASIC and gets it through resolution, color and 5-color binarization conversion while loading the data into DDR-SDRAM from time to time.

It also converts the print data to 5-color binary equivalents of image and command data.

d) The ASIC (IC1) generates image data synthesized with mask data within the ASIC in sync with the discharge time while loading the data into DDR-SDRAM from time to time.

e) The ASIC (IC2) collects printhead information from EEPROM mounted on the printheads and the printer temperature from the latch IC on the carriage board and transmit them to the ASIC (IC1).

The ASIC (IC1) also receives mask pattern data from the firmware installed in flash ROM.

f) The ASIC (IC1) converts the image data synthesized with the mask pattern to data associated with the printhead information and the printer temperature, trans-mitting the data to the printheads as a print signal. It transmits heat pulses to the printheads at the same time to optimize head driving. g) The printheads convert the received print signal from a serial signal to a parallel signal for each row of nozzles and ANDs it with the heat pulses for perform

(c) the printing. h) The ASIC (IC1) controls the general aspects of image processing and print drive control by detecting the status of the individual printer components with reference to the adjustment values stored in EEPROM. SDR-SDRAM is used as work memory.

ŔOM.

#### 2.1.3 Print Driving

Print and control signals are transferred via the carriage PCB to the printheads to discharge inks from the nozzle assembly at printing. Each printhead has 12 trains of nozzles arranged in a zigzag pattern.

This printer uses one printhead.

(In installed state, from left to right, C, M, Y, MBK, MBK, BK) Print signals directed at each nozzle train are even-numbered nozzle data (Hx-x-DATA-x-EV) and odd-numbered nozzle data (Hx-x-DATA-x-OD). These are transferred in timing with a data transfer clock (Hx-CLK) and data latch pulses (Hx-LT). The Heat Enable (Hx-x-HE-x) drive control signal enables inks to be discharged from the nozzles.

1. Pint drive control

Each train of nozzles in a printhead has 2,560 nozzles.

Ink discharge nozzles are selected split in 40-, 20- or 10-nozzle blocks according to the Block Enable information in the even-numbered nozzle data and odd-numbered nozzle data.

Each selected block of nozzles is impressed with a Heat Enable signal generated with variable pulse widths according to the head rank, head temperature and printer temperature for optimized ink discharges. The nozzles are driven by heater boards in the nozzles to discharge inks. Optimal nozzle blocks are selected according to the print path.

The diagram below illustrates the relationship between a 40-block nozzle and nozzles driven.

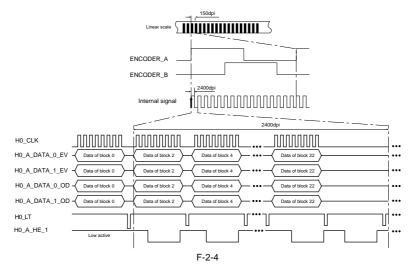
#### 2. Print drive timing

Each printhead houses 12 trains of nozzles, which share the same data transfer clock (Hx-CLK) and data latch pulses (Hx-LT). Even-numbered nozzle data (Hx-x-DATA-x-EV), odd-numbered nozzle data (Hx-x-DATA-x-OD) and the Heat Enable (Hx-x-HE-x) signal are generated for each

Printing is carried out in two ways through reciprocating motion of the carriage. An encoder sensor mounted on the carriage generates a 150-dpi-pitched linear scale detection signal (ENCODER\_A) and a signal (ENCODER\_B) shifted 120 de-grees in phase. The direction of carriage motion is detected from the status of the ENCODER\_B signal relative to the leading edge of the ENCODER\_A signal. The printhead is driven using a 2400-dpi timing signal (internal signal), which is generated by dividing the ENCODER\_A signal detected at the 150 dpi timing into 16 equal sections.

Printing in the forward direction is triggered at the leading edge of the detection signal (ENCODER\_A).

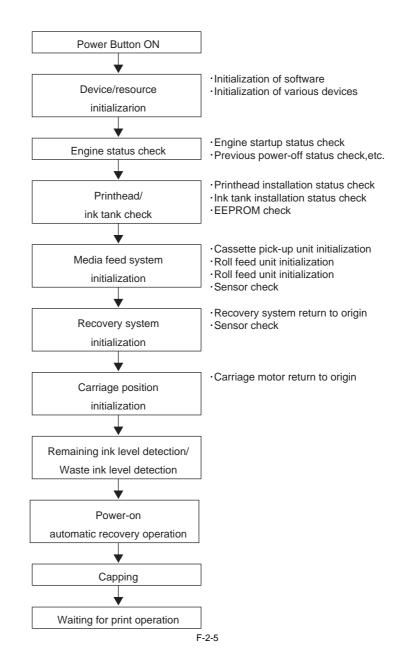
Printing in the backward direction is carried out the same way as printing in the forward direction but at the trailing edge of the detection signal (ENCODER\_A), when the order of heated nozzles is reversed depending on the sequence of transfer of even-numbered nozzle data and odd-numbered nozzle data.



# 2.2 Firmware

#### 2.2.1 Operation Sequence at Power-on

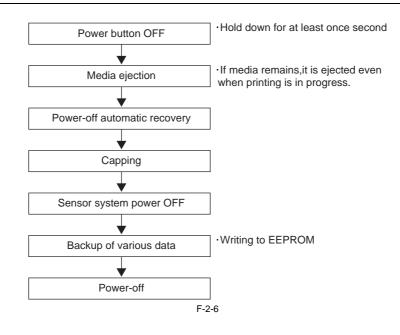
Shown below is the flowchart of the initialization sequence from the moment the power is turned on to the moment the printer enters the online state. The time required for initialization is less than 1 minute\*. \* This time does not include the time required for supplying ink and cleaning which takes place after the printer has been left unused for an extended period of time.



# 2.2.2 Operation Sequence at Power-off

Turning off the power cuts off the voltage to all drive systems. At this time, the firmware starts the power-off sequence as shown below.

This printer immediately suspends all operations in progress and stops whenever the power cord is unplugged or a cover such as the top cover is opened. In this case, the printer may stop without capping the print head. If the power was turned on by unplugging the power cord, plug the power cord into the outlet, turn on the power again so that the printer enters the online or offline state, and then press the Power button to turn off the power.



# 2.2.3 Print Control

### 1. Print mode

This printer is capable of fast, high-quality printing without blur and non-uniform density by changing the carriage operation, media feeding, other printing methods according to the selected media type, print quality, print data and so on. Printing is performed for each color using a maximum of 16 paths in each print mode according to the selected print quality. This reduces density irregularities caused by the variation in the amounts of ink discharged from individual nozzles. In addition, it shifts the printing timing so that the current ink layer is nearly fixed before the next ink layer is applied, thus minimizing bleeding. Even in the same mode, the printer operates in a different way depending on the media setting made using the printer driver.

## a) Draft mode

In the draft mode, image data is thinned out and a single band (equivalent to the width of a nozzle array) is printed using one path. To use this mode, select "Draft" under "Print Quality" in the printer driver.

## b) Standard mode

In the standard mode, a single band (equivalent to the width of a nozzle array) is printed using 1-6 (1, 2, 4 or 6) paths. To use this mode, select "Standard" under "Print Quality" in the printer driver.

#### c) High quality mode

In the high quality mode, a single band is printed using 2, 4 or 8 paths. To use this mode, select "High" under "Print Quality" in the printer driver.

#### d) Highest quality mode

In the high quality mode, a single band is printed using 12 or 16 paths. To use this mode, select "Highest" under "Print Quality" in the printer driver.

T-2-1

# Printing Modes

\_

|              | Media Type                   | Print Priority         | Print<br>Quality | Print-<br>Pass | Printing Direction | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi) | Used BK<br>ink |
|--------------|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| in Paper/    | Plain Paper                  | Office Document        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
| cycled Paper |                              | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | <u>g</u>         | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Y                      | D G              |                | -                  |                              |                |
|              |                              | Image                  | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | Plain Paper (High Quality)   | Office Document        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | 0, 1, 1          |                |                    |                              |                |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Image                  | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | 0                      | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  | 4              |                    |                              | MBK            |
|              |                              | OFF. D                 | High             |                | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    |                |
|              | Plain Paper (High Grade)     | Office Document        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  | 2              |                    |                              | MBK            |
|              |                              | -                      |                  |                | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    |                |
|              |                              | Image                  | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK | Office Document        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Text                   | Dian             |                |                    |                              |                |
|              |                              | TOAT                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Image                  | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | image                  | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     |                              | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  |                |                    | 1200x1200                    |                |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | Economy Bond Paper           | Office Document        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  |                |                    | 1200x1200                    |                |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 2              | Single-directional |                              | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Image                  | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | Universal Bond Paper         | Office Document        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  |                |                    |                              |                |
|              |                              | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | TOAL                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Image                  | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     |                              | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  |                |                    | 1200x1200                    |                |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | Standard Paper 1569B 80g     | Office Document        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  |                |                    |                              |                |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        |                  | 2              | Single-directional | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Image                  | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              | Standard Paper 1570B 90g     | Office Document        |                  |                |                    |                              |                |
|              | Stanuaru Paper 1570B 90g     |                        | Standard         | 1/2            | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|              |                              | Text                   | Dian             | 1              |                    |                              | MBK            |

|       | Media Type                     | Print Priority         | Print<br>Quality | Print-<br>Pass | Printing Direction | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi) | Used BK<br>ink |
|-------|--------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| Paper | Coated Paper                   | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | 8                | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Imaga                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Image                  |                  |                |                    |                              |                |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       | Heavyweight Coated Paper       | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | innage                 | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  |                |                    |                              |                |
|       |                                |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       | Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | 8-                     | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | -                |                |                    |                              |                |
|       | D 110 1D                       | <b>V</b> · <b>D</b>    | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       | Recycled Coated Paper          | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | 8-                     | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 12             |                    |                              | BK             |
|       | W I D I J D                    | <b>V</b> · <b>D</b>    | Highest          | _              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    |                |
|       | High Resolution Paper          | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | 0                      | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Highest          | 12             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | L' D //                | -                |                |                    |                              |                |
|       | Premium Matte Paper            | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Ŭ                      | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       | Matte Photo Papar              | Line Document/         | -                |                |                    |                              | BK             |
|       | Matte Photo Paper              | Text                   | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    |                |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Ŭ                      | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|       | Colorad Coated Barar           | Image                  | -                |                |                    |                              |                |
|       | Colored Coated Paper           | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|       | Premium Coated Paper           | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | Tura                   | Ct. 1 1          |                |                    |                              |                |
|       |                                | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|       |                                | e                      |                  |                |                    |                              |                |
|       |                                | Ũ                      | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |

=

|               | Media Type                                     | Print Priority | Print<br>Quality | Print-<br>Pass | Printing Direction | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi) | Used B<br>ink |
|---------------|--|----------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------|
| Photo Paper   | Glossy Photo Paper                             | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Semi-Glossy Photo Paper                        | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Photo Paper Plus                               | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               | 1  | U              | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Photo Paper Plus Semi-Gloss                    | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               | r noto r upor r lus senir Gloss                | iniuge         | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | 0                | 16             | Bi-directional     |                              | BK            |
|               |  | x              | Highest          |                |                    | 2400x1200                    |               |
|               | Photo Paper Pro                                | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Glossy Paper                                   | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper 2               | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Heavywght SemiGlos Photo Paper 2               | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               | , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,          |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Satin Photographic Paper 190gsm                | Imaga          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Satin Fnotographic Faper 190gsin               | Image          |                  |                |                    |                              |               |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  | -              | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Premium RC Photo Luster, 10 mil                | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Instant Dry Papers Glossy 200g                 | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Instant Dry Papers Satin 200g                  | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Photo Paper High Glossy 250g                   | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  | U              | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Photo Paper Semi Matt 250g                     | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Thoto Tuper Senii Mar 250g                     | iniuge         | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          |                | Bi-directional     |                              |               |
|               | Photo Bapar Satin 240a                         | Imaga          | -                | 16             |                    | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Photo Paper Satin 240g                         | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  | *              | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Photo Paper Pearl 260g                         | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
| roofing Paper | Proofing Paper                                 | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Professional Proof and Photo Glossy 195g       | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Professional Proof and Photo Semiglossy        | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               | 195g   |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | _                |                |                    |                              |               |
|               |  | x              | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               | Professional Proof and Photo Semigloss<br>255g | Image          | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |
|               |  |                | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK            |

|                 | Media Type                             | Print Priority         | Print<br>Quality | Print-<br>Pass | Printing Direction | Print<br>Resolution<br>(dpi) | Used BK<br>ink |
|-----------------|--|------------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| Synthetic Paper | Synthetic Paper                        | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 | Adhesive Synthetic Paper               | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
| Board           | POP Board                              | Image                  | Standard         | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
| Adhesive Matt   | High Resolution Graphic Paper Self ADH | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
| Paper           |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
| CAD             | CAD Tracing Paper                      | Line Document/<br>Text | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 | CAD Translucent Matte Film             | Line Document/         | Draft            | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  | Text                   |                  | 1              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        | Standard         | 2              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
|                 |  |                        |                  | 4              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | MBK            |
| Special         | Special 1                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 | Special 2                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 | Special 3                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 | Special 4                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 | Special 5                              | Image                  | Standard         | 6              | Bi-directional     | 1200x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | High             | 8              | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |
|                 |  |                        | Highest          | 16             | Bi-directional     | 2400x1200                    | BK             |

\_

# 2.2.4 Print Position Adjustment Function

This printer has a printing position adjusting function to adjust the lateral and longitudinal printing positions and bidirectional printing position of the printhead mounted on the carriage as well as the media feed amount.

The printing position can be adjusted in two ways: "automatic adjustment" by which the multi sensor installed at the lower left of the carriage reads the printing position adjusting pattern and "manual adjustment" by which a print position adjusting pattern is printed with the printing conditions changed little by little to allow the user to enter the visually checked adjustment value from the operation panel.

Printing position adjustment requires A4-size or larger roll media or cut sheet.

# 2.2.5 Head Management

This printer has a nozzle check function to detect any non-discharging nozzle. When a non-discharging nozzle is detected, the printer performs the print head cleaning operation. If the problem persists after completion of the print head cleaning operation, the non-discharged nozzles are automatically backed up by other nozzles.

# 2.2.6 Printhead Overheating Protection Control

This printer performs printhead overheating protection control when an abnormally high temperature is detected in the printhead. The printhead can overheat, for instance, when the print operation continues for some time with no ink supplied to the nozzles.

The overheating protection control function prevents a print head nozzle from becoming clogged or damaged due to excessive heat.

Overheating protection control is performed based on the temperatures detected by the head temperature sensors in the nozzle arrays. If overheating is detected in a single nozzle array, overheating protection control is performed at either of the following levels according to the temperature.

### Protection level 1:

If the printhead temperature sensor detects a temperature above the limit, the carriage stops at the scan end position printer in the direction of travel according to the carriage's scan status.

Then, wait control is performed to allow the printhead to cool naturally. When the printhead temperature drops below the prescribed value or 30 seconds have lapsed since detection of the abnormal temperature, printing resumes.

### **Protection level 2:**

When the head temperature sensor detects an abnormally high temperature, printing stops immediately, the carriage is moved to the home position, and the printhead is capped. In this case, an error code is shown on the display.

## 2.2.7 Pause between Pages

To prevent ink blots form forming, this printer has a "pause between pages" function to hang down the printed paper from the platen to dry it and delivers it after lapse of the specified wait time.

The user can set the wait time using the printer drive. This function is particularly useful for printing on film-type sheets that requires extra long time to dry. For borderless printing, 30 seconds of drying time is automatically set.

# 2.2.8 White Raster Skip

To improve the printing throughput, this printer has a white raster skip function to skip the carriage scan operation for continuous blank segments in print data.

## 2.2.9 Sleep Mode

This printer has a Sleep mode to reduce the standby power.

The printer automatically enters the Sleep mode (Power Save mode) when neither user operation nor data reception occurs for a preset period of time in the online or offline mode.

The printer wakes from the Sleep mode when the user presses any button on the operation panel or data is received from the host computer.

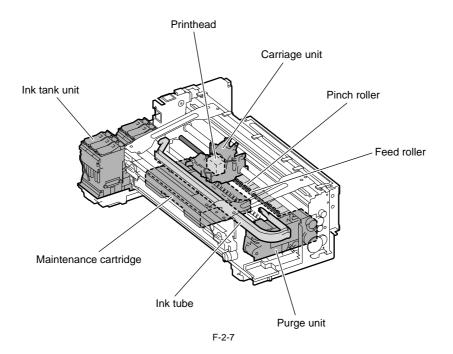
The time until the printer enters the Sleep mode can be changed from the operation panel. (Default: 5 minutes)

# 2.3 Printer Mechanical System

# 2.3.1 Outline

# 2.3.1.1 Outline

The printer mechanism can be broadly divided into two major components: the ink passage and paper path. The ink passage consists of an ink tank, a carriage unit having a printhead, a purge unit. and a maintenance cartridge unit which are used to supply, circulate, and suck ink. The paper path consists of a cassette pick-up unit, roll feed unit, paper feed unit to support four types of media feeding, transport, and ejection. This section provides an overview of these mechanical components.



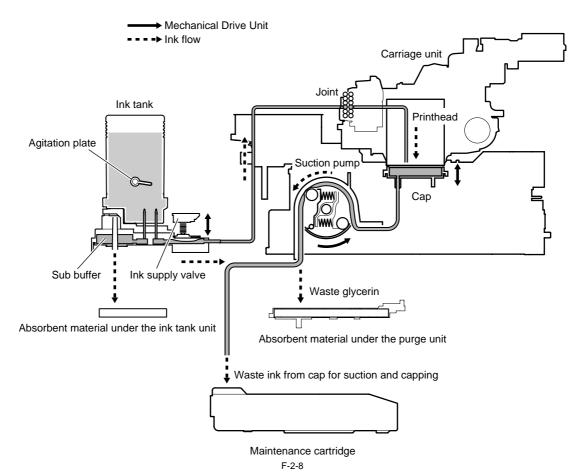
0017-4721

# 2.3.2 Ink Passage

# 2.3.2.1 Ink Passage

## 2.3.2.1.1 Overview of Ink Passage

The ink passage consists of ink tanks, printhead, cap, waste ink collection unit, ink tubes for connecting the mechanical components, and an ink suction pump which is operated to suck ink. These components are used to supply, circulate, and suck ink. A schematic diagram of the ink passage (for one color) and the ink flow are shown below.



## a) Ink supply from ink tank to ink supply valve

The ink tank contains ink to be supplied to the printhead. Ink flow from the ink tank to the ink tank supply valve due to the fluid level difference.

### b) Ink flow from ink tank to sub-buffer

Ink flows from the ink tank to the sub-buffer due to the fluid level difference, and air enters the ink tank through the air passage of the sub-buffer, maintaining the pressure inside the ink tank constant.

If the ink in the sub-buffer exceeds the predetermined level, the excessive ink flows to the absorbent material under the ink tank.

#### c) Ink supply from ink supply valve to printhead

Ink is supplied from the ink tank to the printhead by opening the ink supply valve, capping the head, and operating the suction pump. The ink sucked from the caps flows to the maintenance cartridge.

#### d) Ink supply during printing

During printing, the ink supply vale is held open to allow ink to flow from the ink tank to the printhead constantly due to the negative pressure generated by discharging of ink.

The waste ink used for printhead cleaning and borderless printing flows to the waste ink absorbent materials under the maintenance cartridge in addition to the waste ink box.

# A

If all of ink passages are opened (no ink tank is installed, the ink supply valve is opened, and the printhead fixer lever is opened) when the ink tube is filled with ink, the ink in the ink tube may reverse-flow due to the fluid level difference and ink may leak from the hollow needle of the ink tank. Do not open all of the ink passages at the same time when the ink tube is filled with ink

#### e) Agitation of ink in the ink tank

Ink in the ink tank is agitated to prevent precipitation of pigment-based ink in the ink tank.

This function is implemented by reverse-flowing ink to the ink tank by opening and closing the supply valve in succession. Inside the ink tank is provided with an agitation plate to assist agitation of ink. (The agitation plate is also provided in the - Operation timing: When a new ink tank is installed or when 168 hours have lapsed since the previous agitation (the agitation is performed irrespective of the

whether the printer is printing or cleaning its head)

- Ink supply valve opening/closing count: 30 times (every 30 seconds)

If 336 or more hours have lapsed, the ink valve opening/closing count and the time until the next agitation are changed according to the length of the tame lapsed.

# 2.3.2.2 Ink Tank Unit

# 2.3.2.2.1 Structure of Ink Tank Unit

0013-5200

### a) Ink tank

Each ink tank contains 130 ml of ink (the starter ink tank supplied with the printer contains 90 ml of ink) for each color. The amount of ink is memorized in the EEPROM mounted to the ink tank.

The amount of the ink remaining in the ink tank is detected as a dot count according to the data memorized in the EEPROM. When the electrodes mounted to the hollow needle detect a con-conductive state, a message appears on the display to indicate that the ink is nearly empty. If the dot count reaches the prescribed value, the ink tank is considered to be empty.

# b) Ink port

When the ink tank lock lever is pressed down, the hollow needle enters the ink port (covered with a rubber plug), establishing an ink passage between the printer and ink tank.

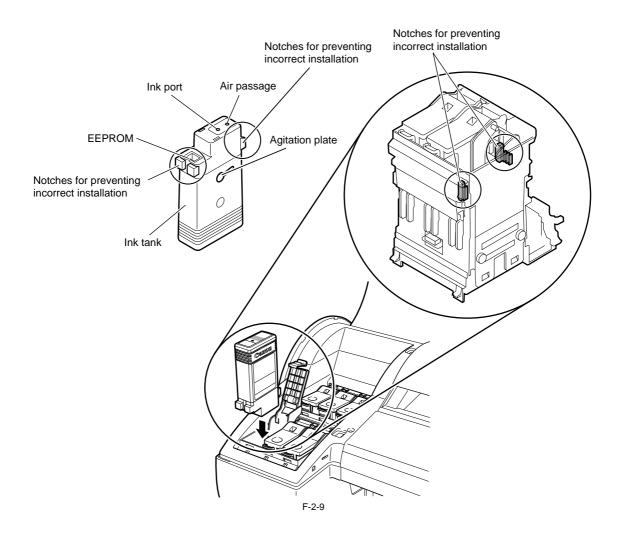
#### c) Air passage

When the ink tank lever of the printer is pressed down, the hollow needle enters the air passage (covered with a rubber plug) and thus the internal pressure of the ink tank is released, maintaining the internal pressure constant.

**d)** Notches for preventing incorrect insertion The ink tanks have notches for preventing insertion. Wrong ink tanks cannot be installed in place due to these notches. The ink tank lock lever can lowered to start ink supply only when the ink tank has been installed in place.

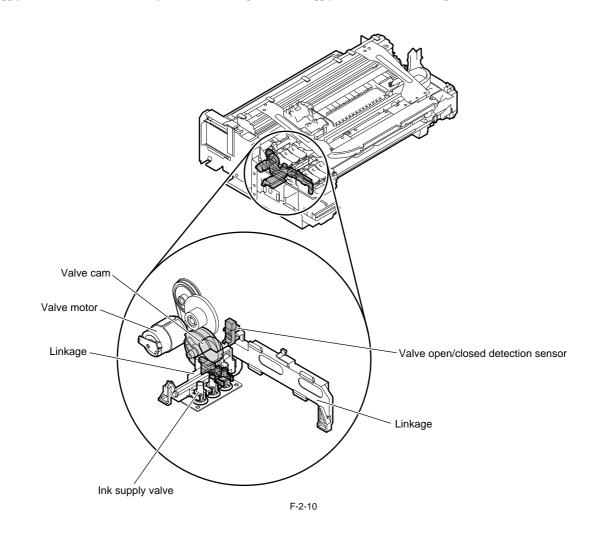
## e) Agitation plate

The agitation plate assists the ink agitation which is performed to prevent precipitation of ink.



## f) Ink supply valve

The ink supply valve is located between the ink tank and ink tube to prevent ink leakage from occurring when the ink tube on the ink tank side is opened during replacement of the ink tank. The ink supply valve is opened and closed by the valve open/close mechanism which is driven by the valve motor. The ink tank unit consists of two tank bases each of which contains ink tanks for three colors and the ink tubes for six colors. The ink supply valve for each color is driven by the valve cam though a link. Ink supply valves for all colors are opened and closed at the same time.



# 2.3.2.3 Carriage Unit

## 2.3.2.3.1 Functions of Carriage Unit

#### a) Printhead mounting function

The carriage mechanically locks the printhead and is connected to the printhead via the terminals on the carriage PCB.

#### b) Control function

The carriage incorporates a carriage PCB that relays the signal from the main controller, a linear encoder that generates a print timing signal based on the detected carriage position, and a multi sensor that detects the media width and skewing to adjust the registration and height. The carriage PCB and main controller PCB are connected with a flexible cable.

#### c) Carriage drive function

The carriage motor moves the carriage back and forth on the platen via the carriage belt.

### d) Printhead maintenance function

The printer performs the printhead cleaning operation such as printhead wiping and suction at the home position of the carriage.

#### e) Nozzle check function

The printer detects a non-discharging nozzle using the head management sensor attached to the maintenance jet tray by discharging ink with the carriage stopped at the maintenance jet tray.

### f) Media thickness adjustment function

If the gap between the printhead face and the media increases due to the difference in media thickness, cockling, curling, and so on, more ink mist is generated. In reverse, if the gap decreases, the head can touch the media surface more frequently.

To maintain the proper gap, the remote lifter is driven to adjust the head height automatically according to the selected media type, media supply method, printing conditions (borderless/priority print type), environmental conditions (temperature/humidity), and the result of measurement by the multi sensor. The relationship between media types and head heights (from the platen) is summarized in the table below. Note that the head height is adjusted with priority given to the media gap measured by the multi sensor.

T-2-3

| Head height (mm) | Media type (Value in parentheses:mm)              |
|------------------|---|
| 1.4              | Glossy paper(0.2), plain paper(line drawing)(0.1) |
| 1.8              | Plain paper(0.1)                                  |
| 2                | Coated paper(0.5)                                 |
| 2.2              | Semi-glossy canvas(0.5)                           |
| 3.2              | Board paper(1.5)                                  |

g) Paper leading edge detection function/paper width detection function/skewing detection function The leading edge, width, and skewing of the paper fed to the platen is detected by the multi sensor mounted at the lower left of the carriage.

#### h) Auto print head position adjustment function

The adjustment pattern printed on paper is read by the multi sensor mounted at the lower left of the carriage, thus adjusting the printing timings of each printhead automatically.

## i) Remaining roll media detection function

The amount of the remaining roll paper can be detected using the multi sensor mounted at the lower left of the carriage by printing a barcode at delivery of the roll media.

### j) Internal temperature detection function

The internal temperature around the printhead is detected using the thermistor mounted on the carriage PCB.

## 0013-4834

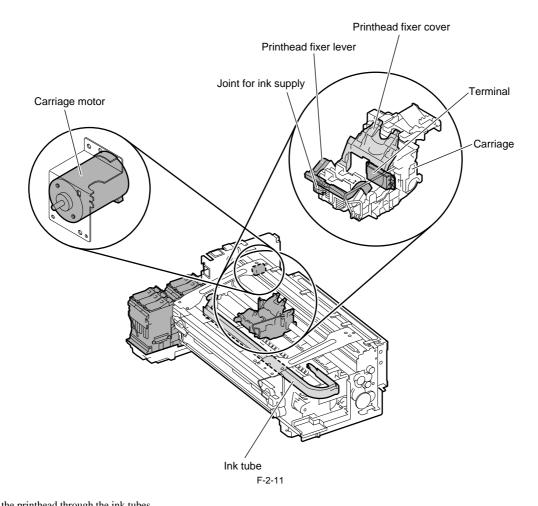
# 2.3.2.3.2 Structure of Carriage Unit

## a) Printhead mounting unit

The printhead is secured to the carriage by the printhead fixer lever. When the printhead is secured to the carriage, the signal contact of the carriage PCB touches the signal contact point of the printhead, allowing print signals to be transmitted.

0013-4891

The ink passage from the ink tank is connected to the printhead through the ink tube and joint.



### b) Ink port

Ink is supplied to the printhead through the ink tubes. Ink tube run through the ink tube guide mounted on the carriage and move in conjunction with the carriage.

# c) Control unit

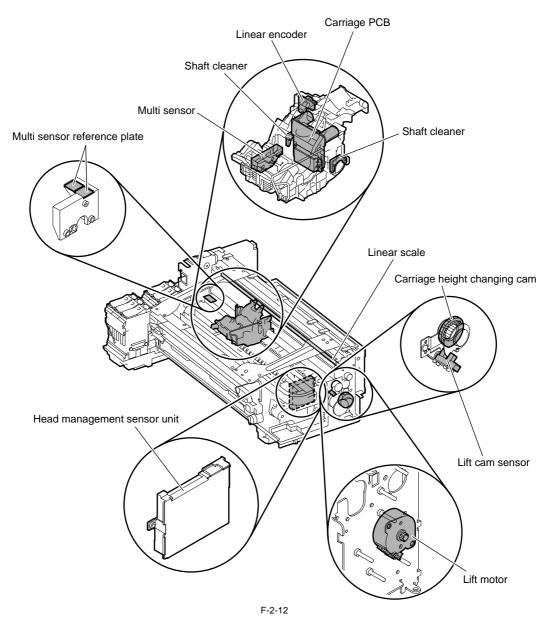
The carriage PCB is connected to the main controller PCB with a flexible cable. The flexible cable moves in conjunction with the carriage.

A photo-coupler-type encoder is mounted at the top of the rear of the carriage to detect the slit on the linear scale during carriage movement, thus controlling the print timing.

#### d) Carriage drive unit

Mechanical misalignment of the printhead in the vertical and horizontal direction and in bidirectional printing can be corrected by changing the print timing using the "Adjust Printer" option in the Main menu.

The carriage motor (DC motor) moves the carriage back and forth on the platen via the carriage belt. The carriage home position is the capping position to which the carriage is slowly moved when the power is turned on. When the position read on the linear scale is set as the home position for position control, the carriage motor moves based on control signal output from the main controller.



#### e) Printhead maintenance unit

The printer performs the printer deleaning operation at the home position of the carriage. The purge motor is used for wiping. When the carriage is stationary at the home position, the printhead installed in the carriage is wiped with the wiper blade. The wiper blade is pressed against the absorbent material soaked with glycerin so that the wiper blade is moistened with glycerin, thus improving the wiping performance.

Idle ejection of ink is performed on the cap, the borderless ink tray of the platen, and paper. The suction operation is performed by rotating the pump motor after completion of capping.

#### f) Media thickness adjustment unit

The gap between the printhead face and media is changed with the rotation of the carriage height changing cam driven by the lift motor. The height of the printhead is detected by the multi sensor mounted at the lower left of the carriage.

# g) Multi sensor unit

The multi sensor mounted at the lower left of the carriage is composed of four LEDs (red, blue, green, infrared) and two light-sensitive elements which are used to detect the leading edge, width, and skewing of paper and adjust the registration and head height. The multi sensor reference plate is provided with a white plate. By measuring the quantity of the reflected light from the white plate, the reference value for gap

measurement is computed. (Service mode: SERVICE MODE>ADJUST>GAP CALIB)

### h) Shaft cleaner units

The shaft cleaners mounted at the left and right of the carriage are used to clean the carriage and apply oil to the shaft.

### i) Internal temperature detection

A themistor for measuring the internal temperature is mounted on the carriage PCB on the rear of the head holder.

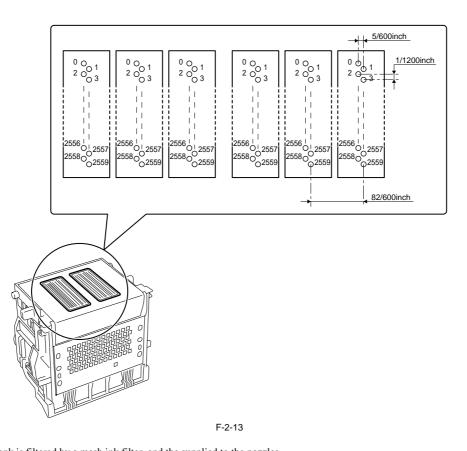
# 2.3.2.4 Printhead

# 2.3.2.4.1 Structure of Printhead

# <u>0013-4821</u>

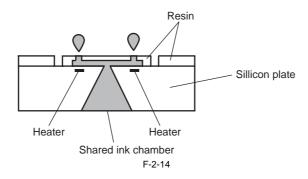
A printhead incorporates six nozzle arrays. Each nozzle can be controlled individually so that a six-color discharge action can be performed by a single printhead.

a) Nozzle arrays A total of 2560 nozzles are arranged in a two-column staggered pattern. In each column, 1280 nozzles are arranged in a staggered pattern at intervals of 600 dpi, forming a 2560-nozzle arranged at intervals of 1200 dpi.



## b) Nozzle structure

Ink supplied from the ink tank is filtered by a mesh ink filter, and the supplied to the nozzles. Ink is supplied from the shared ink chamber to the nozzles. When the head driving current is applied to the nozzle heater, ink boils and form bubbles so that ink droplets are discharged from the nozzles.



0013-5334

# 2.3.2.5 Purge Unit

# 2.3.2.5.1 Functions of Purge Unit

To maintain high print quality, the purge unit performs maintenance of the nozzles o the printhead. The purge unit supports a capping function, cleaning function, and ink supply function.

#### a) Capping function

The capping function presses the cap of the purge unit against the face plate on the nozzle section of the printhead to prevent nozzle drying and dust adhesion. Capping is performed when printing is complete, at the start of the suction operation, and when switching to the standby state due to an error. The capping function also establishes the ink passage between the printhead and purge unit.

#### b) Cleaning function

The cleaning function restores the printhead to the state where ink can be easily discharged from nozzles. This function includes the following three types of operations.

## - Wiping operation

This operation is performed to remove paper fibers and dried ink from to the face plate.

- Pumping operation This operation is performed to remove ink from the nozzles and fill the nozzles with fresh ink.

## - Maintenance jet operation

This operation is performed to spray ink from the nozzles to the cap, borderless ink jet tray, an paper to remove bubbles in the nozzles and dust and other foreign particles.

# c) Ink supply function

The suction pump of the purge unit operates together with the ink supply valve to supply ink to the printhead during the initial filling and ink level adjustment.

Details of the cleaning function are shown in the table below.

| Cleaning mode | Name of Service mode<br>or PRINT INF<br>(Name of Main Menu) | Operation                             | Description of cleaning  |
|---------------|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| Cleaning 1    | CLN-A-1/CLN-M-1<br>(Head Cleaning A)                        | Normal cleaning                       | Removes dried ink from nozzles, thick ink accumulated on the face, and paper particles.  |
| Cleaning 2    | CLN-A-2   | Ink level adjustment and cleaning     | Adjust the ink level in the head by suction, and then performs normal cleaning.  |
| Cleaning 3    | CLN-A-3   | Initial filling ink                   | Fills the empty tube (during initial installation) with ink, and then performs normal cleaning.  |
| Cleaning 4    | CLN-M-4<br>(Replace P.head)                                 | Ink drainage for head replacement     | Drains ink to replace the head (drains only the ink in the head).  |
| Cleaning 5    | CLN-M-5<br>(Move Printer)                                   | Ink drainage for secondary transport  | Drains ink from the head and tube for secondary transport.   |
| Cleaning 6    | CLN-A-6/CLN-M-6<br>(Head Cleaning B)                        | Normal (strong) cleaning              | Performs suction stronger than when adjusting the ink filling<br>amount in the head or normal cleaning to unclog nozzles.                            |
| Cleaning 7    | CLN-A-7   | Aging                                 | Performs idle ejection after replacement of the head.  |
| Cleaning 10   | CLN-A-10<br>(Move Printer)                                  | Ink filling after secondary transport | Fills the empty tube (during installation after secondary<br>transport) with ink, and performs normal cleaning.                                      |
| Cleaning 11   | CLN-A-11  | Ink filling after head replacement    | Performs normal cleaning after head replacement and ink filling.   |
| Cleaning 15   | CLN-A-15  | Dot count suction                     | Performs suction to remove ink adhered to dried nozzles and<br>thick ink accumulated on the face when the dot count reaches<br>the prescribed value. |
| Cleaning 16   | CLN-A-16  | Precipitated ink agitation            | Performs the agitation (ink supply valve open/close) operation to prevent the ink ingredient from precipitating.                                     |
| Cleaning 17   | CLN-A-17  | Cleaning (weak)                       | Performs cleaning weaker than normal cleaning to unclog<br>nozzles.  |

T-2-4

Cleaning operation timings are as follows.

|   |   | Printer status   |  | Cleaning operation  | Consumption<br>(typ.)*1 |
|---|---|--|--|---|-------------------------|
| Standby   | 168 hours elapsed cappe                   | ed   | Cleaning 1 (Normal<br>Cleaning)  | 1g  |                         |
|   | At least 720 hours elaps<br>installation) | ed since the last session of Cleaning 2                      | Cleaning 6 (Normal<br>(strong) Cleaning)   | 5g  |                         |
|   | At initial installation an                | d 96 hours elapsed since the last sessi                      | Cleaning 16<br>(Precipitated ink<br>agitation)   | -   |                         |
|   | wiping                                    | with a specified number of dots discha                       | Wiping + Idle ejection   | 0.013g  |                         |
| Power-on  | At initial installation                   |  | Cleaning 3 (initial filling ink)   | 15g   |                         |
|   | Both heads and inks available             | The print operation has completed.                           | 168 to 720 hours elapsed capped  | Cleaning 1 (Normal<br>Cleaning)   | 1g                      |
|   |   |  | At least 720 hours elapsed since the<br>last session of Cleaning 2, 3, 6 or 10<br>(360 hours after initial installation) | Cleaning 6 (Normal<br>(strong) Cleaning)  | 5g                      |
|   |   |  | At least 96 hours elapsed since the<br>last session of Cleaning 16   | Cleaning 16<br>(Precipitated ink<br>agitation)  | -                       |
|   |   |  | At least 1 hour elapsed capped with<br>a specified number of dots<br>discharged per chip completed after<br>last wiping  | Wiping + Idle ejection  | 0.013g                  |
|   |   | Print operation aborted (uncapped)<br>and CR error occurring | Up to 72 hours elapsed after an abort  | Cleaning 1 (Normal<br>Cleaning)   | 1g                      |
|   |   |  | Over 72 hours elapsed after an abort   | Cleaning 6 (Normal<br>(strong) Cleaning)  | 5g                      |
|   |   | Print operation aborted (uncapped)                           | and no CR error occurring  | Cleaning 11 (ink filling after head replacement)  | 10g                     |
|   | No heads are available                    |  | Cleaning 10 (ink filling<br>on secondary transport)  | 15g   |                         |
| Power off   | Specified number of do                    | ts discharged per chip completed since                       | e the last session of wiping   | Wiping + Idle ejection  | 0.013g                  |
| Before the  | Less than 168 hours elap                  | psed capped  |  | Idle ejection   | 0.013g                  |
| start of<br>printing  | At least 168 hours elaps                  | ed capped  | Cleaning 1 (Normal<br>Cleaning)  | 1g  |                         |
|   | Before printing in the w                  | ake of an error occurrence                                   | Cleaning 1 (Normal<br>Cleaning)  | 1g  |                         |
| Printing  | Before scanning while p                   | printing   | Idle ejection (+Wiping)  | - (0.013g)  |                         |
| After the end of printing                                       | A specified number of d                   | ots (color) discharged per chip since the                    | ne last session of Cleaning 2, 3, 6 or 1   | Cleaning 6 (Normal<br>(strong) Cleaning)  | 5g                      |
|   | A specified number of c                   | lots discharged per chip after the last                      | Wiping + Idle ejection   | 0.013g  |                         |
|   | •   | the last session of capping                                  | Wiping + Idle ejection   | 0.013g  |                         |
|   | Total 2 hours elapsed un                  | ncapped since the last session of Clean                      | Cleaning 1 (Normal<br>Cleaning)  | 1g  |                         |
| When the<br>Head  | Manual Cleaning (Head                     | Cleaning A)  |  | Cleaning 1 (Normal<br>Cleaning)   | 1g                      |
| Cleaning<br>menu choice<br>is executed                          | Manual cleaning (Head                     | cleaning B)  |  | Cleaning 6 (Normal<br>(strong) Cleaning)  | 5g                      |
| When the<br>Replace Print<br>Head menu<br>choice is<br>executed | After head replacement                    |  |  | Cleaning 2 (ink level<br>adjustment and<br>cleaning) + Cleaning 4<br>(ink drainage for head<br>replacement) | 10g                     |
| When the<br>Move Printer  | After the Move Printer                    | menu choice is executed                                      |  | Cleaning 5 (ink drainage for secondary transport)   | 10g                     |
| menu choice<br>is executed                                      | After power-on at secon                   | ndary installation   |  | After power-on at secondary installation  | 15g                     |

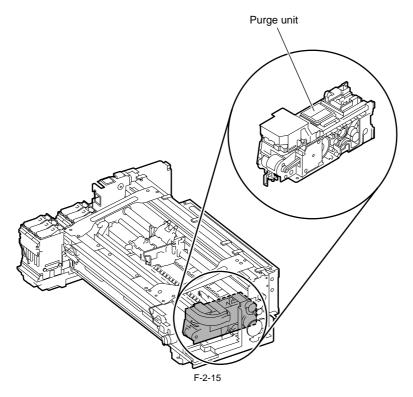
T-2-5

T-2-6

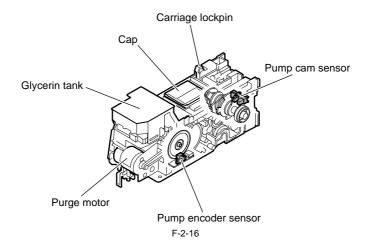
\*1: Quantities of ink consumption by nozzle train

## 2.3.2.5.2 Structure of Purge Unit

<u>0013-4307</u>



a) Cap unit The cap unit is used to cap the print head nozzles during capping and cleaning. The portion that touches the face plate is made from rubber. Two caps are arranged for the printhead (six arrays of nozzles) installed in the carriage. During cleaning, the caps used for both suction and capping are used to suck ink from the printhead using the suction pump. During capping, the caps are raised by the cap cams operated by the purge motor to cover the arrays when the carriage has moved to the home position, thus pro-tecting the nozzles.

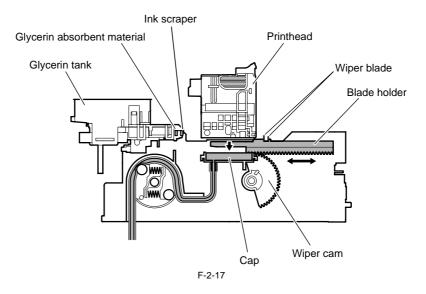


## b) Wiper unit

b) wiper unit
b) wiper unit
c) The wiper unit operated by the purge motor wipes the print head face.
c) The printer is provided with a pair of wiper blades for better wiping performance.
c) The wiping operation is performed by a "slide wipe" method by which the purge motor rotates (in the normal direction) to slide the wiper blade via the wiper cam.
c) It is performed by a constant-speed movement toward the front of the printer as viewed from the printer front.
c) The wiper blade, which is positioned at right angles to the print head, wipes the entire printhead face, and then the narrow blade is used to wipe the nozzle arrays.
c) After wiping, the wipe blades are cleaned before they are set at the wiping position so that the maximum wiping performance is obtained.
c) During the wiper blade cleaning, the ink removed form the head is rubbed off by the in scraper.
c) Absorber to motoring is performent to write blades to the printer the wiper blades are formance.
c) Absorber to motoring the wiper blade (with blue print the wiper blades to the print the wiper blades to be dealed to wipe the nozzle arrays.

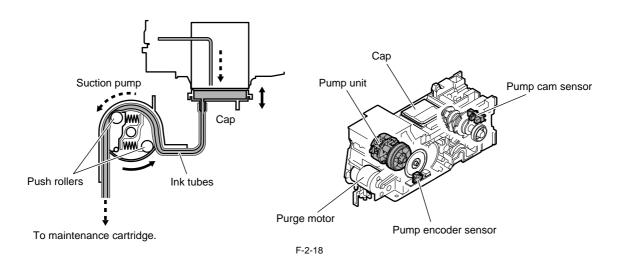
Absorbent material soaked with glycerin is pressed against the wiper blades to enhance the wiping performance. The amount of glycerin used (tank capacity: 50 ml) is managed by counting the number of times the wiper blade is pressed against the absorbent material. When the count reaches the following value, an advance notice of replacement (printing can be continued) or a request for replacement (service call error) is displayed.

| Advance notice of replacement | 47,500times |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| Service call                  | 50,000times |



#### c) Pump unit

This printer uses tube pumps (suction pumps) that press on the ink tubes using rollers to produce negative pressure, thus sucking ink. Two rollers are used to press on a single tube one after another to control the amount of ink sucked. The roller rotation timing is detected by the pump cam sensor, and the amount of rotation is controlled by the driving of the purge motor.



# 2.3.2.6 Maintenance Cartridge

# 2.3.2.6.1 Maintenance Cartridge

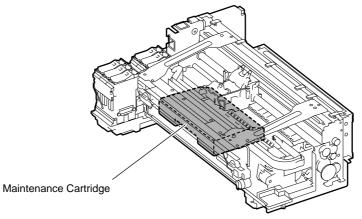
a) Maintenance cartridge The maintenance cartridge can contain up to approximately 778 ml (approx. 830 g ) of waste ink (including the moisture evaporation in the waste ink).

b) Detection of waste ink in maintenance cartridge The quantity of waste ink in the maintenance cartridge is measured by counting dots. When the quantity of waste ink collected in the maintenance cartridge reaches 80% of the cartridge capacity, a warning message "MTCart Full Soon" appears to

0013-4160

When this error occurs, the printer judges the maintenance cartridge is replaced with a new one. The maintenance cartridge incorporates an EEPROM. The engine firmware reads and writes the contents of the EEPROM to control the maintenance cartridge is cartridge is replaced with a new one.

status.



F-2-19

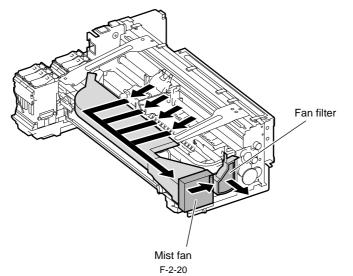
2-28

0013-4162

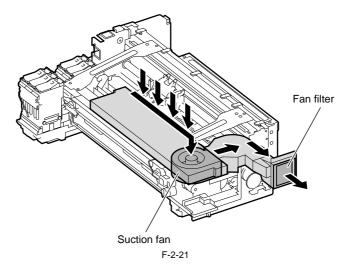
# 2.3.2.7 Air Flow

# 2.3.2.7.1 Air flow

This printer has two fans, a mist fan used to collect mist and a suction fan used to suck media onto the platen. Ink mist that floats inside the printer and ink splashes from the media are collected in the filter through the front duct and the air flow path inside the printer by the driving of the mist fan, thus preventing mist from discharged outside the printer.



During operation of the suction fan, suspended substances are collected in the filter through the airflow path inside the printer, preventing them from being emitted to outside of the printer.

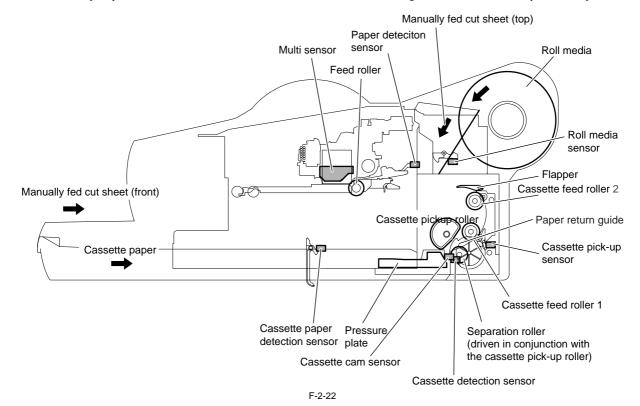


# 2.3.3 Paper Path

# 2.3.3.1 Outline

# 2.3.3.1.1 Overview of Paper Path

<u>0013-4163</u>



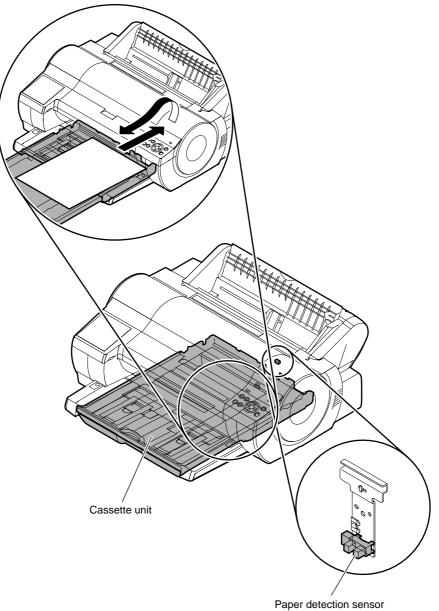
The paper path consist of a cassette pick-up unit, roll feed unit, feed roller unit, pinch roller drive unit that applies/releases pressure to/from the pinch roller, spur drive unit that moves the spur up/down, and various sensors that detect the media feed status, allowing media to be fed in four ways, fed, and ejected.

# 2.3.3.2 Paper Path

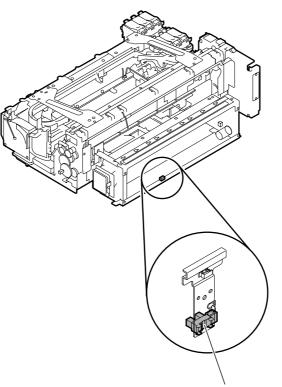
# 2.3.3.2.1 Structure of Cassette Pick-up Unit

<u>0013-4167</u>

The paper loaded in the cassette is fed by the pick-up roller, and then fed onto the platen via the feed roller. The pick-up roller unit has a cassette separation roller to prevent multiple sheets from being fed at the same time. The excess sheets separated by the separation roller are returned to the cassette using the sheet return guide. The sheet supplied from the cassette is detected by the cassette pick-up sensor and paper detection sensor. If no sheet is detected within the specified time, this problem is detected as a paper jam.



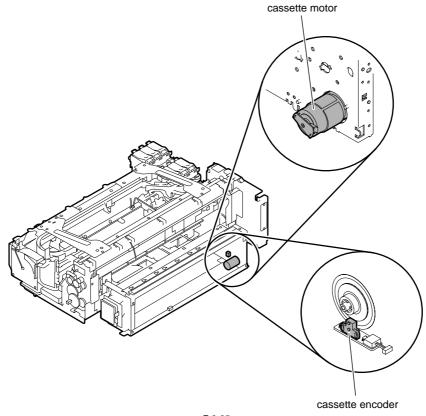
F-2-23



Cassette pick-up sensor

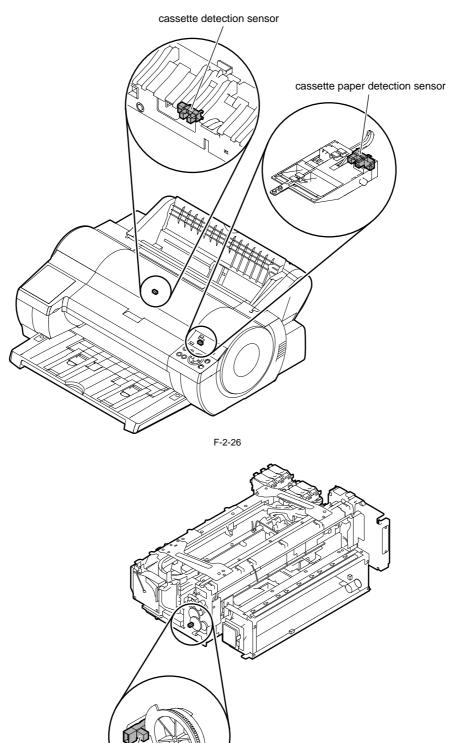
F-2-24

The cassette pick-up roller and cassette feed roller are driven by the cassette motor under the control of the cassette encoder.



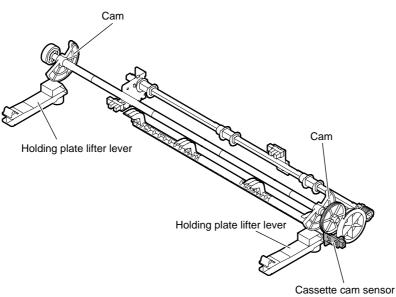
F-2-25

At the bottom of the cassette unit are mounted a cassette detection sensor and a cassette paper detection sensor to check whether a cassette is loaded and whether paper is present in the cassette. The pressure plate is moved up and down by the cam and the movement is detected by the casette cam sensor.





cassette cam sensor

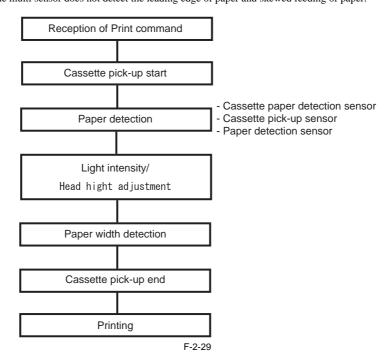




# 2.3.3.2.2 Cassette Pick-up Sequence

0013-4172

When a Print command is received with paper loaded in the cassette, cassette pick-up operation starts. The paper supplied from the cassette is checked for normal feeding using the sensors provided along the paper feed path. When the paper is fed by the specified length, the multi sensor adjusts the light intensity and the head hight, detects the paper width, and then starts printing. During feeding, paper is fed by the cassette pick-up roller and cassette feed roller. During printing, paper is fed by the feed rollers. In paper is fed from the cassette, the multi sensor does not detect the leading edge of paper and skewed feeding of paper.

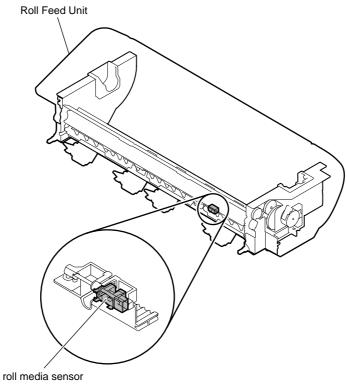


# 2.3.3.2.3 Structure of Roll Media Pick-up Unit

0013-4170 When the roll media sensor detects media loaded with the printer powered, the roll media pick-up roller touches the media to rotate the roll media feed roller, thus feeding the roll media onto the platen. Roll media feeding is controlled by the roll motor and roll feed unit PCB. The roll media pick-up roller is moved up and down by the cam, and the cam movement is detected by the roll media cam sensor. When the printer is turned on with roll media loaded, the roll media pick-up operation starts automatically.

<image><image>

If the roll media sensor detects that there is no roll during roll media pick-up operation, the roll media is ejected.



F-2-31

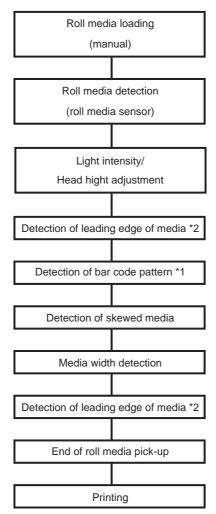
2-36

### 2.3.3.2.4 Roll Media Pick-up Sequence

When the roll media detects the loaded roll media, roll media pick-up operation starts.

0013-4173

When media is fed from the auto roll feed unit by the specified length, the nulti sensor performs the adjustments and detection shown below, thus completing the roll media pick-up operation. Roll media is fed by controlling the roll motor and feed motor of the auto roll feed unit.



\*1

- This operation is performed only when "ON" is selected for "Detect Remaining Roll Media".

- If the roll media does not have a bar code pattern on it, enter the length of the roll media using the menu on the operation panel.

\*2

- The purpose of the first leading edge detection is to detect presence of media.

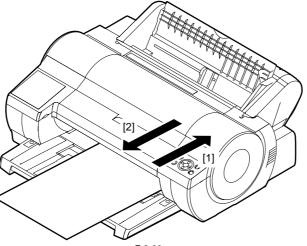
- The purpose of the second leading edge detection is to detect the printing start position.

F-2-32

# 2.3.3.2.5 Structure of the Manual Feed Unit

# a) Manual feed (from front)

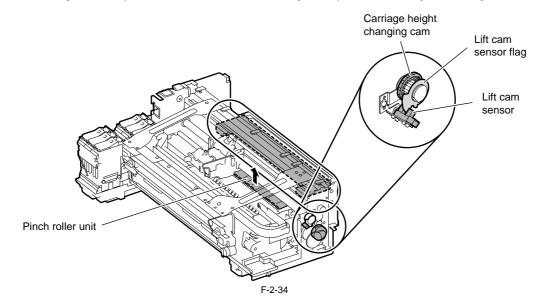
The cut sheet fed from the front (ejection unit) of the printer is fed to the rear of the printer [1], and then fed onto to platen [2] for printing.



<u>0013-4171</u>

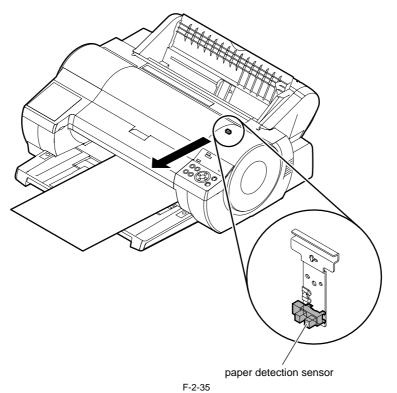
F-2-33

This method of feeding paper can be used only when an accept media type is selected from the Manual Feed menu in the use mode. If you select the Manual Feed menu, the pinch roller unit moves up to allow you to feed paper from the front of the printer according to the message shown on the operation panel. The pinch roller unit is moved up and down by the lift motor. The cam which is also operated by the lift motor via gears moves up and down the pinch roller.

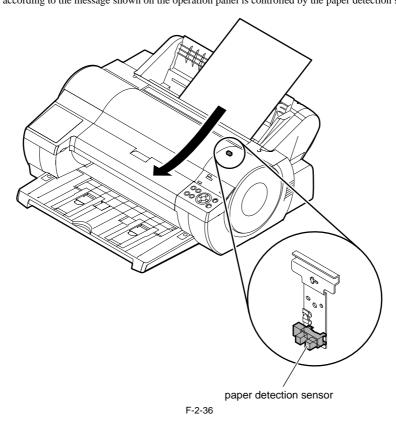


2-38

The pick-up timing of the paper fed to the rear of the printer is controlled by the paper detection sensor.



b) Manual feed (from rear) The paper loaded in the paper tray provided at the rear of the printer is fed onto the platen for printing. This method of feeding paper can be used only when an acceptable media type is selected from the Manual Feed menu in the user mode. The pick-up timing of the paper loaded in the rear paper tray according to the message shown on the operation panel is controlled by the paper detection sensor.



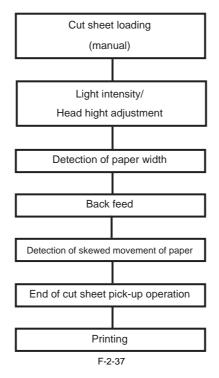
## 2.3.3.2.6 Manual Feed (from Front) Sequence

<u>0013-4174</u>

<u>0013-4176</u>

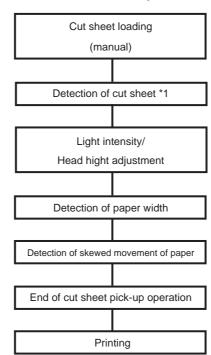
This sequence can be performed according to the messages shown on the operation panel only when a specific type of media is selected after selecting the manual feed mode from the menu shown on the operation panel. When a cut sheet is loaded according to the message shown on the operation panel, the printer performs various adjustments and detection using the multi sensor and then feeds the cut sheet to the rear of the printer. At this time, the multi sensor detects skewed feeding and leading edge of the cut sheet, thus completing the paper pick-up operation.

During printing, the cut sheet is fed by controlling the rotation of the feed roller according to the selected print mode.



## 2.3.3.2.7 Manual Feed (from Rear) Sequence

This sequence can be performed according to the messages shown on the operation panel only when a specific type of media is selected after selecting the manual feed mode from the menu shown on the operation panel. When the cut sheet loaded at the back of the printer is detected by the sensor, the printer starts feeding the cut sheet. After this, the printer performs various adjustments and detection using the multi sensor, thus completing the paper pick-up operation. During printing, the cut sheet is fed by controlling the rotation of the feed roller according to the selected print mode.

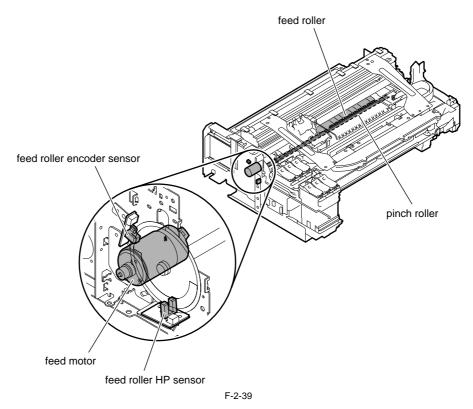


\*1

The auto roll feed unit starts feeding the cut sheet when the roll media detection sensor detects the media. When the auto roll feed unit is not mounted, the printer starts feeding the media when the paper detection sensor detects the media.

## 2.3.3.2.8 Structure of Feed Roller Unit

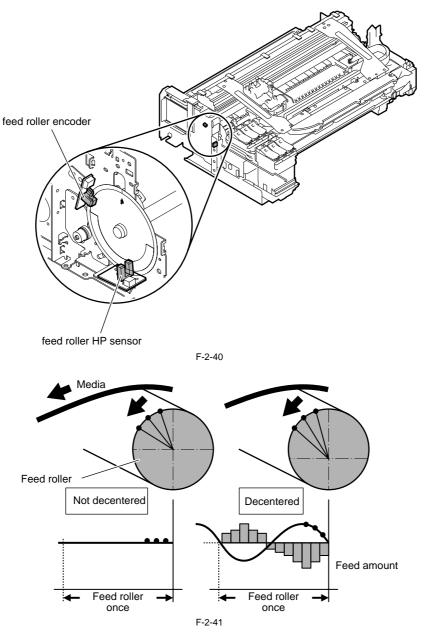
<u>0013-4178</u> The feed roller unit consists of media feeding mechanisms such as feed rollers driven by the feed motor and the pinch roller unit operating in conjunction with the feed rollers. While being held flat on the platen, media is fed horizontally under the printhead. The feed roller unit has a sensor that detects the media feed status and a sensor that detects the status of the mechanisms that constitute the paper path.



# 2.3.3.2.9 Feed Roller Eccentricity Detection Function

<u>0013-4206</u>

Media are fed by the feed roller at regular intervals. Irregular feeding of media due to the feed roller eccentricity problem, irregular printing can occur in the media feeding direction periodically. To prevent this, the feed error encoder and feed roller HP sensor detect the presence and amount of feed roller eccentricity every rotation of the feed roller. This function is called the feed roller eccentricity detection function. If eccentricity is detected, the media feed mount is compensated for according to the amount of eccentricity.



0013-4208

# 2.3.3.2.10 Structure of Ejection Sour

# a) Outline

The ejection spur unit consists of a spur, a spur motor that moves the spur, a spur cam sensor, and an eject roller.

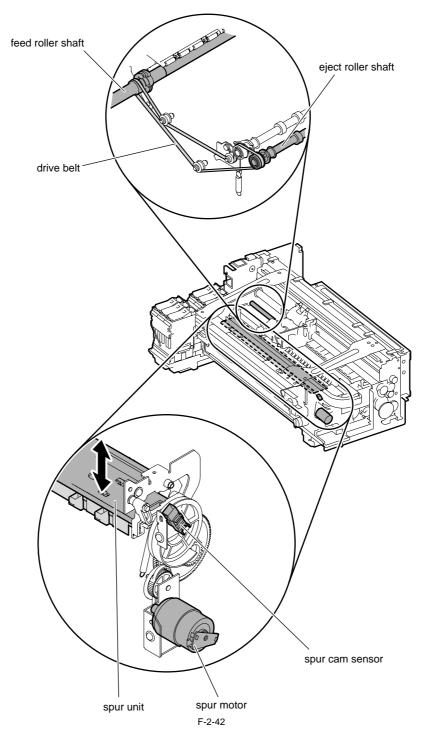
b) Spur lift mechanism The spur must be moved up and down according to the selected media type and feed mode. The spur motor and spur cam sensor are used to control the spur stop position.

In case of manual feed from front

When the above mode is selected in the user mode, the spur moves to the upper limit position and then stops.
Stop position depending on media type
To prevent the spur from damaging the media, the spur stops at a proper position according to the media type selected in the user mode.

# c) Eject roller drive

The drive power of the eject roller is transmitted from the feed roller via the drive belt.

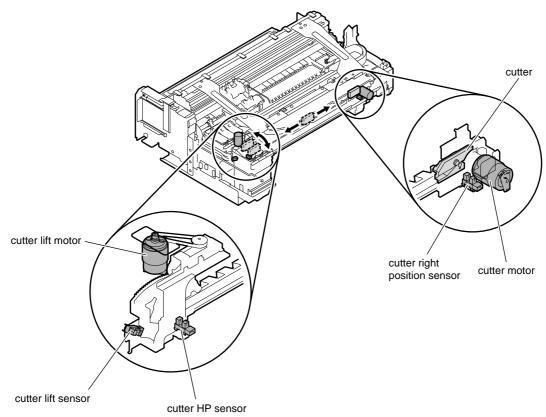


# 2.3.3.3 Cutter Unit

# 2.3.3.3.1 Structure of the cutter unit

# <u>0013-4209</u>

If roll media are used, the cutter unit attached on the front of the spur unit cuts the leading end of the media on loading and cuts the media on ejection. Whether to perform cutting or not is determined by the choice of the main menu and the specifications of the printer driver. The cutter unit is moved up and down by the cutter lift motor. When cut sheets are used, the cutter unit escapes to the specified position (moves up) to prevent the trailing edge of the ejected cut sheet from remaining in the cutter unit. The cutter unit stands by at the cutter home position, except when it cuts roll media. Power from the cutter drive motor is imparted to the circular belt to move the cutter from left to right for cutting roll media.



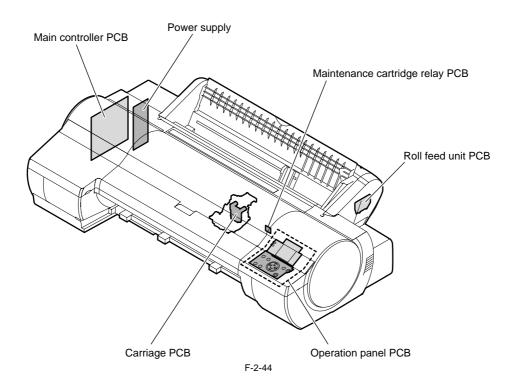
F-2-43

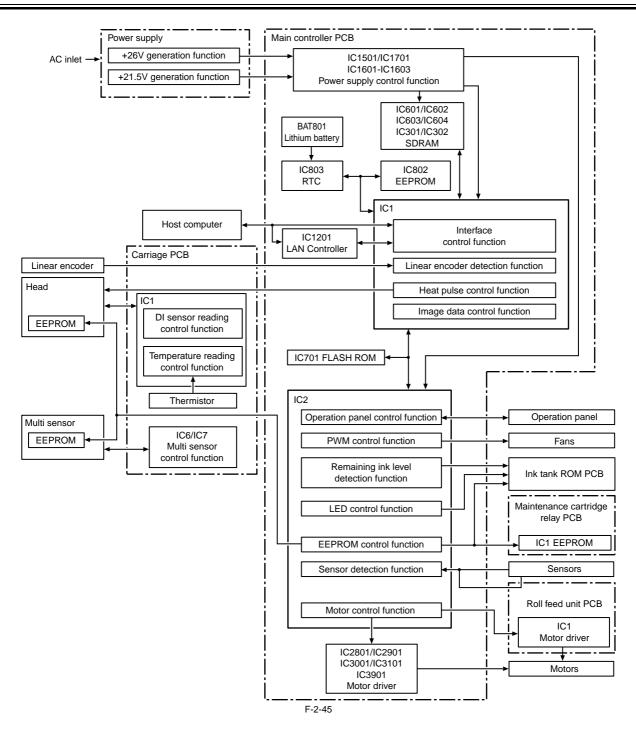
# 2.4 Printer Electrical System

# 2.4.1 Outline

# 2.4.1.1 Overview

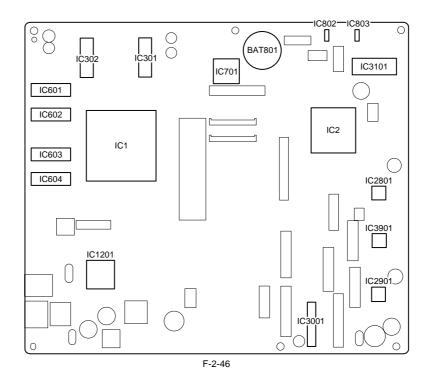
The printer electrical system consists of the main controller PCB and power supply PCB which are mounted on the left side of the printer, the carriage PCB and print head which are mounted in the carriage, and other electrical components such as the operation panel, sensors, and motors. The main controller PCB manages the image data processing and the entire electrical system, and controls relay PCBs and driver functions.





# 2.4.2 Main Controller

# 2.4.2.1 Main controller components



### a) ASIC (IC1/IC2)

The ASIC with a 16-bit internal bus is driven in sync with the 66 MHz external clock. It supports the following functions:

### Image processing unit

This unit converts the RGB multi-value image data or CMYK multi-value data received from the host computer through the interface connector to the binary image data for the ink colors used.

### **DMA** controller

This controller control DMA transfer of the data transferred through the input interfaces such as the USB and expansion card slot as well as DMA transfer of the data stored in the DIMM.

### Image data generation/output function

This function generates image data for color printing from the received image data and the mask pattern (corresponding to print mode) stored in the FLASH ROM, and stored the generated image data in DIMM. It also outputs the generated image data to the carriage PCB.

### Interrupt controller

This controller receives and processes internal interrupts and external interrupts from the USB, image processing unit, and expansion card slot.

### **Timer function**

Even when the printer is turned off, the timer function is held on using the RTC(IC803) and lithium battery(BAT801) to assist the cleaning function. When the power cord is plugged to the outlet, power is supplied to the RTC and therefore the lithium battery power is not consumed.

### Heat Enable signal control function

This function uses the pulse width to perform variable control of the time of application of the Heat Enable signal to the nozzle heater board for each printhead nozzle array.

### Linear scale count function

This function reads the linear scale when the carriage moves, thus generating the ink discharge timing. It also counts the linear scale timing cycle using the reference clock to measure the carriage moving speed.

### **Dot count function**

This function controls the discharge dots used as the information for Heat Enable signal control, maintenance jet control, cleaning control, and remaining ink level for each nozzle array.

# **Operation panel control function**

This function controls serial communication with the operation panel.

# **PWM control function**

This function controls driving of the suction fan and mist fan as well as the temperature of the printhead.

### **Remaining ink level detection function**

This function detects the remaining level of each color of ink based on the signal received from the hollow needle mounted in the ink tank unit.

# **LED** control function

This function controls the LEDs on the ink tank unit.

### I/O port function

This function controls input signals from sensors.

### Power ON/OFF control function

This function controls turning on/off of the drive power (26 V and 21.5 V) supplied from the power supply PCB.

## Head DI sensor read control function

# This function controls read operation by the head DI sensor.

### Multi sensor control function

This function controls the LED, adjusts the gain, and controls obtainment of the reading for the multi sensor.

### **EEPROM** control function

This function controls the EEPROMs of individual ink tanks, the maintenance cartridge EEPROM, the EEPROM on the maintenance cartridge relay PCB, and the head EEPROM in addition to the on-board EEPROM.

### Motor control function

This function controls the carriage motor, feed motor, valve motor, spur motor, purge motor, cassette motor, lift motor, cutter motor and cutter lift motor based on the input signals from sensors.

# b) Driver IC (IC3101)

This IC generates a carriage motor control signal based on the control signal from the ASIC.

### c) Driver IC (IC2801)

This IC generates feed motor and valve motor control signals based on the control signal from the ASIC.

# d) Driver IC (IC2901)

This IC generates purge motor, cutter motor and spur motor control signals based on the control signal from the ASIC.

### e) Driver IC (IC3001)

This IC generates a lift motor control signal based on the control signal from the ASIC.

# f) Driver IC (IC3901)

This IC generates cutter lift motor and cassette motor control signals based on the control signal from the ASIC.

g) DIMMs (IC301,IC302,IC601,IC602,IC603,IC604) The DIMM comprising a 128-MB DDR-SDRAM and a 128-MB SDR-SDRAM is connected to the 32-bit data bus to be used as a work area. During print data reception, it is also used as an image buffer. It cannot be expanded.

# h) FLASH ROM (IC701)

A 16-MB flash ROM is connected to the 8-bit data bus to store the printer control program.

### i) EEPROM (IC802)

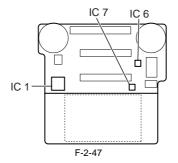
The 128-KB EEPROM stores various setting values, adjustment values, log data, counter values related to the user/servicing.

### MEMO:

After replacement of the main controller PCB, the printer must be started up in the service mode to take over the setting and adjustment values to the new PCB properly (the service mode will be switched to the PCB replacement mode automatically).

# 2.4.3 Carriage Relay PCB

# 2.4.3.1 Carriage PCB components



### a) Latch ICs (IC1)

### DI sensor reading control function

This function obtains the DI sensor value in the printhead and head rank for each color and sends it to the main controller PCB based on the control signals from the main controller.

### Environmental temperature reading control

This function sends the environmental temperature detected by the thermistor on the board based t the main controller PCB based on the control signals from the main controller PCB.

### Image data relay function

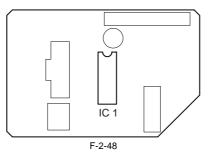
This function relays the image data from the main controller PCB to the printhead. The function for processing image data is not supported.

# b) Multi sensor control ICs (IC6 and IC7)

These ICs are used to generate the multi sensor LED control signal and adjust the gain.

# 2.4.4 Motor Driver

# 2.4.4.1 Roll feed unit PCB components



# a) Driver IC (IC1)

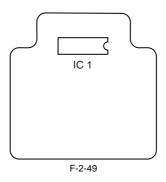
# **Roll motor drive function**

This function controls the roll motor based on the control signals from the main controller.

**Sensor relay function** This function relays the input signals from the roll cam sensor and roll media sensor to the main controller PCB.

# 2.4.5 Maintenance Cartridge Relay PCB

# 2.4.5.1 Maintenance cartridge relay PCB components

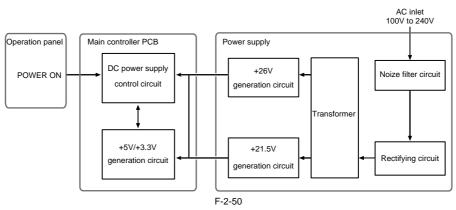


# a) EEPROM (IC1)

The 128-KB EEPROM stores all information written to the EEPROM on the main controller PCB.

# 2.4.6 Power Supply

# 2.4.6.1 Power supply block diagram

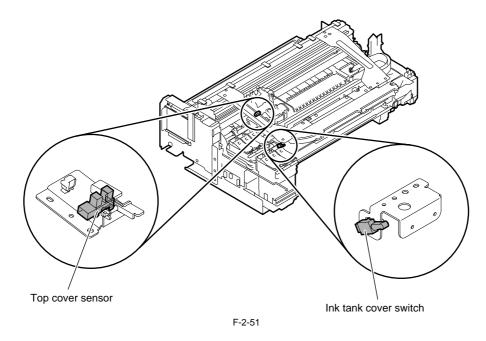


The power supply converts AC voltages ranging from 100 V to 240 V from the AC inlet to DC voltages for driving the ICs, motor, and others. The voltage generator circuits include the +26 V generation circuit for driving motors, fans, and sensors and a +21.5 V generator circuit for driving sensors, heads, logic circuits, and others.

When the power is turned off, +26 V and +21.5 V are reduced to about 12 V and 9 V respectively (power save mode). Power ON/OFF operation is controlled by the main controller PCB.

# **2.5 Detection Functions with Sensors**

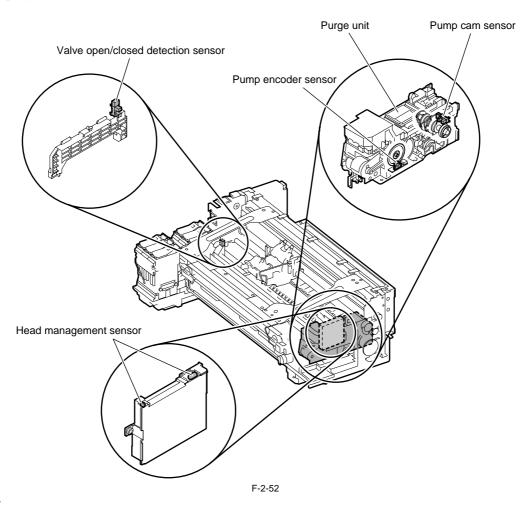
# 2.5.1 Sensors for covers



**Top cover sensor** The photo-interrupter-type top cover sensors detect opening and closing of the top cover. When the top cover is closed, the sensor light is shielded by the sensor arm, thus notifying the sensor of closing the cover.

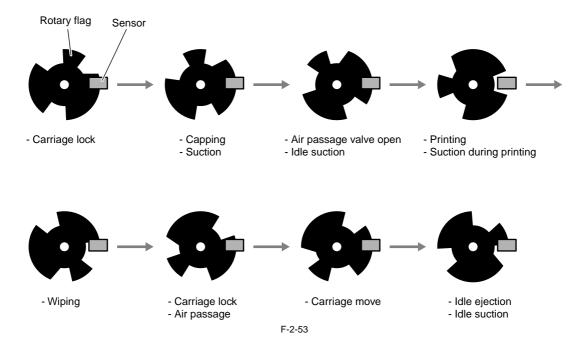
**Ink tank cover switch** The micro-switch-type ink tank cover switch detects opening and closing of the ink tank cover. When the ink tank cover is closed, the protrusion on the ink tank cover presses the switch, thus detecting closing of the ink tank cover.

# 2.5.2 Ink passage system



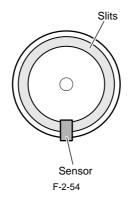
# Pump cam sensor

The photo-interrupter-type pump cam sensor detects that the sensor light is shielded or unshielded by the rotary cam. The sensor detects the purge unit capping and wiping states with the combination of the state detected by the pump cam and the state of pump motor rotation control performed by the pump encoder.



# Pump encoder sensor

The pump encoder is a photo-interruptive type sensor. It reads the slits on the pump motor's encoder film to control the amount of pump motor rotation.



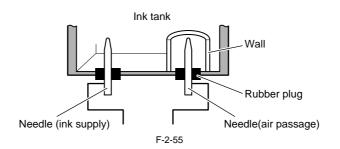
### Valve open/closed detection sensor

The photo-interrupter-type valve open/closed detection sensor detects the valve cam state.

When the link that operates in conjunction with the valve cam shields light, this sensor detects that the ink supply valve has been opened.

### Ink detection sensor

Presence of absence of ink in the ink tank is detected according to whether the two hollow needles are electrically connected. When the ink level in the ink tank lowers below the wall around the hollow needle at the air passage, this hollow needle is electrically disconnected form the hollow needle located on the ink supply side, thus detecting that the printer has run out of ink.



### Head management sensor

The photo-transmission-type sensor detects that the printhead is discharging ink.

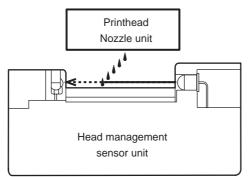
The carriage moves to and stops at the detection positions for individual nozzle arrays. When the carriage is at a stop, nozzles discharge ink on after another. The sensor detects each nozzle due to the voltage change caused when ink discharged from the nozzle blocks the sensor light.

Non-discharging nozzle detection is carried out at the following timings: - After the execution of Cleaning 1, Cleaning 2, Cleaning 3, Cleaning 6 or Cleaning 10

- After the number of copies that has been set by the user menu choice Nozzle Check Frequency have been printed

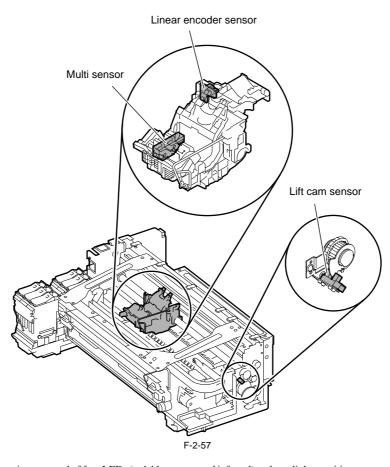
If more than a specified number of non-discharging nozzles have been located in one session of non-discharging nozzle detection, the normal cleaning sequence is launched before a second session of non-discharging nozzle detection is conducted. If more than a specified number of non-discharging nozzles are located in the second session of non-discharging nozzle detection, the normal (High) cleaning session is launched before a third session of non-discharging nozzle detection is conducted.

If 30 or more non-discharging nozzles and less than 100 non-discharging nozzles per train are located as a result of the third session of non-discharging nozzle detection, the print operation can resume after the message display as needed. If 100 or more non-discharging nozzles are located, a head replacement prompt message is displayed.



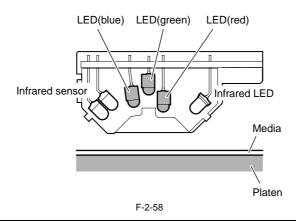
F-2-56

# 2.5.3 Carriage system



### Multi sensor

The photo-reflection-type multi sensor is composed of four LEDs (red, blue, green and infrared) and two light-sensitive sensors. It detects the leading edge, skewing, and width of media and is used for adjustment of the registration, and head height. During head adjustment, the light reflected by the infrared LED is detected by two light-sensitive sensors to calculate the head height from the difference between the measurements.



# Â

Service mode: After SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > GAP CALIB. has been carried out, pass paper to make sure that it is detected properly.

# Linear encoder sensor

When the carriage modes, the linear encoder located at the rear of the carriage reads the slits on the linear encoder to detect the carriage position.

### Lift cam sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. The lift motor is driven by a predetermined number of pulses received after blocking of the sensor light by the flag, thus controlling the heights of the head and platen.

### Environmental temperature sensor

The environmental temperature sensor installed on the carriage PCB detects the temperature around the carriage.

The resistance of the thermistor that changes with the temperature inside the printer is reported to the main controller via the carriage PCB.

The environmental temperature is used to calibrate the head sensor and to detect abnormal head temperatures.

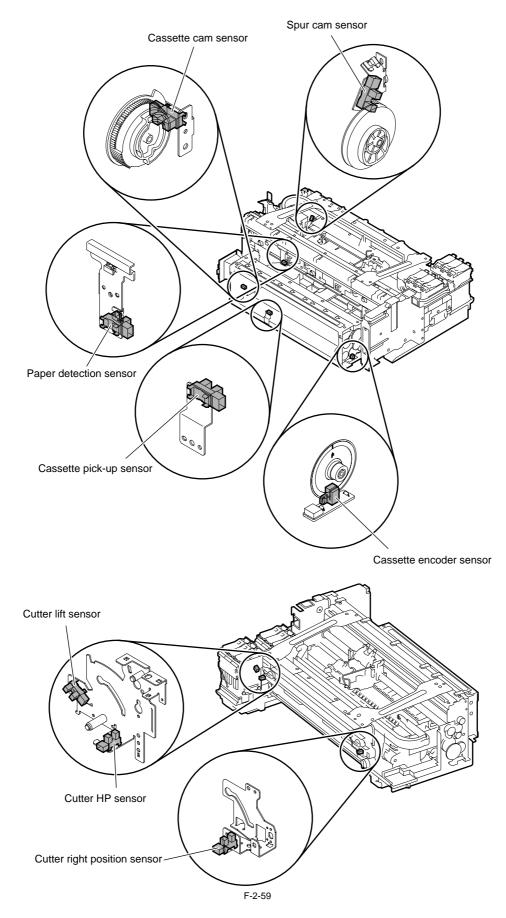
### Head temperature sensor

The diode-type head temperature sensors installed at the top and bottom of the printhead nozzle unit are used to detect the head temperature. The diode voltage that changes with the nozzle unit temperature is reported to the main controller via the carriage PCB.

The detected head temperature is used to control the head operation and to detect abnormal head temperatures.

**Printhead contact detection** The printhead contact status is detected by testing the electrical conductivity. It is detected according to the voltage changes at the two terminals of the contact faces, power supply terminals, and GND terminal.

# 2.5.4 Paper path system



# Cassette pick-up sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When paper supplied from the cassette, the sensor light is blocked by the sensor arm, thus detecting paper.

### Cassette cam sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When the cassette camp rotates to block the sensor light, lowering of the pressure plate of the cassette is detected.

### Cassette encoder sensor

The cassette encoder sensor detects the slits on the encoder film during cassette motor rotation, thus detecting the amount of rotation of the roller.

### Paper detection sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When paper is supplied from the cassette, paper tray, or auto roll feed unit, the sensor light is blocked by the sensor arm, thus detecting paper.

### Spur cam sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When the sensor light is shielded by the rotation of the spur motor, the printer detects that the spur unit is at the upper-limit position. When the sensor light is unshielded by the rotation of the spur motor, the printer detects that the spur unit is at the bottom position. The spur height is controlled by driving the spur motor with a predetermined number of pulses.

### Cutter lift sensor

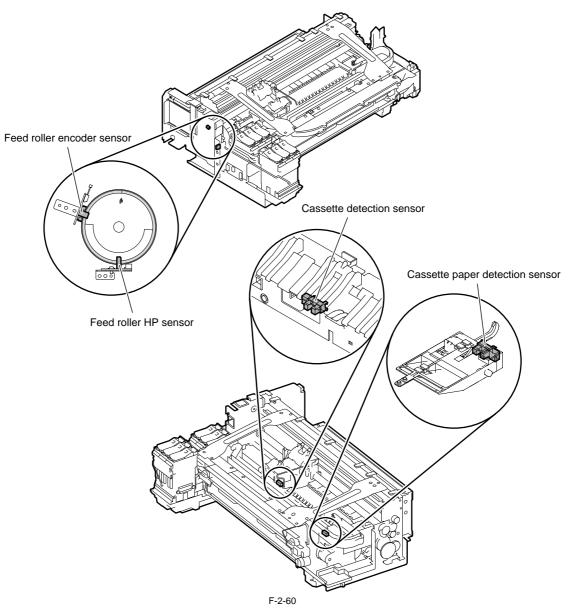
This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When the cutter unit ascends, the sensor unit blocks the sensor light, thus detecting that the cutter unit is at the upper-limit position (escaped).

### Cutter HP sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. This sensor detects that the cutter is at the home position (left end).

### Cutter right position sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. This sensor detects that the cutter is at the right end.



### Cassette detection sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When the cassette is installed, the protrusion at the back of the cassette blocks the sensor light to detect the cassette.

# Cassette paper detection sensor

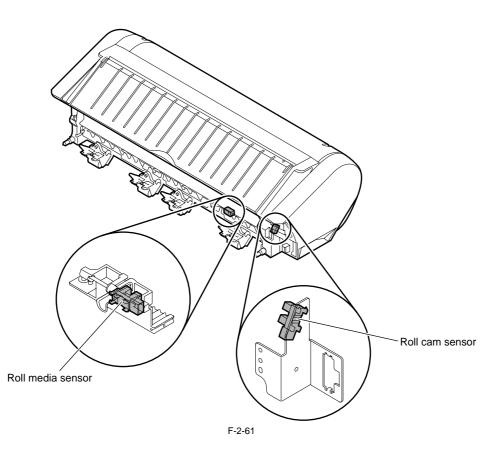
This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When media is loaded in the cassette, the sensor arm blocks the sensor light, thus detecting the media.

# Feed roller HP sensor

The feed roller HP sensor detects the change from the white portion (unshielded sensor light) to black portion (shielded sensor light) of the encoder film on the feed roller, thus setting the home position for feed roller eccentricity compensation.

# Feed roller encoder sensor

The feed roller encoder sensor detects the slits on the encoder film of the feed roller during feed motor rotation, thus detecting the amount of rotation of the feed roller (media feed amount).



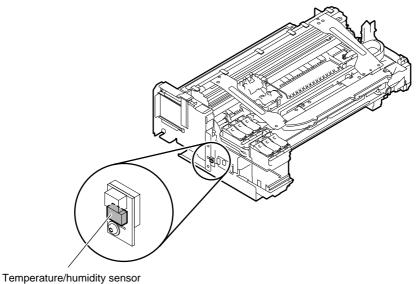
### Roll media sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When media is loaded, the the sensor arm blocks the sensor light, thus detecting the media.

### Roll cam sensor

This is a photo-interrupter-type sensor. When the roll cam blocks the sensor light, lowering of the transport roller (contact with the roller) is detected.

# 2.5.5 Others



Temperature/humidity sensor This sensor detects the temperature and humidity around the printer so that the measured values are used for head height adjustment, idle discharge control, waste ink evaporation amount calculation, and suction fan control.

F-2-62

Chapter 3 INSTALLATION

# Contents

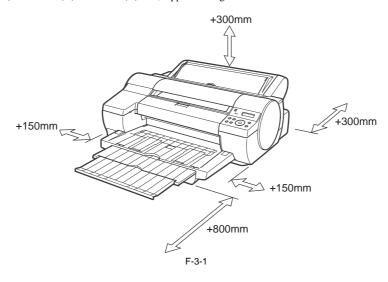
| 3.1 Installation                   | 3-1 |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| 3.1.1 Making Pre-Checks            |     |
| 3.1.1.1 Making Pre-Checks          |     |
| 3.1.2 Unpacking and Installation   |     |
| 3.1.2.1 Unpacking and Installation |     |
| 3.1.2.2 Installing the Stand       | 3-9 |
|                                    | 3-1 |

# 3.1 Installation

# 3.1.1 Making Pre-Checks

# 3.1.1.1 Making Pre-Checks

Carry out the installation work with reference to the "Quick Start Guide" supplied with the printer. Package dimensions and weight are as follows. Main body (with a palette): 1140 (W) mm x 914 (D) mm x 675 (H) mm, Approx. 71 kg



# Installation space

Main body only: 1297 (W) mm x 1910 (D) mm x 644 (H) mm When stand is attached: 1297 (W) mm x 1910 (D) mm x 1285 (H) mm

# 

When printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot, leave at least 1,100 mm (43.3 in) of unobstructed space in front of the printer and 700 mm (27.6 in) behind it.

# 3.1.2 Unpacking and Installation

# 3.1.2.1 Unpacking and Installation

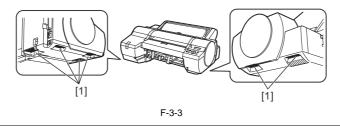
# A

The printer must be moved with it held by three or more persons on both sides. Be careful not to get your lower back and other regions hurt.

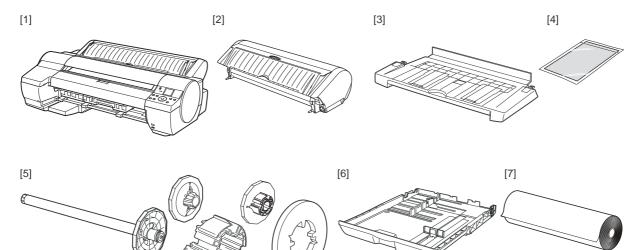


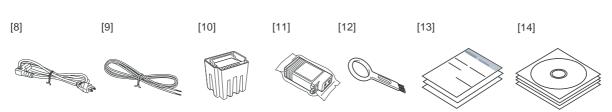
F-3-2

When moving the printer, grasp the carrying handles [1] on the left and right side of the bottom. Holding other portions can drop the printer and you may be injured.



(1) Check to see that none of the accessories is missing.



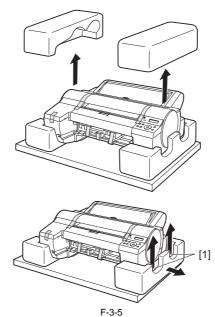


5

F-3-4

Printer
 Auto Roll Feed Unit
 Output Tray
 Cleaning sheet
 Roll Holder Set
 Cassette
 Sample paper
 Power Cord
 Printhead
 Starter ink tanks
 Cleaning brush
 Reference Guides
 CD-ROM

(2) Take out the printer and accessories from the shipping box and remove cushioning materials. First remove the cushioning materials at top of the printer. Next, remove the cushioning materials by raising the left and right sides of the printer one after another with your hand inserted in the clearance as indicated in the figure [1].

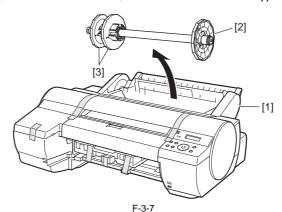


(3) Grasaping the carrying handles [1] on the left and right side of the bottom, place the printer on a level place such as a table.

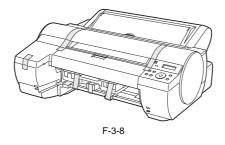


F-3-6

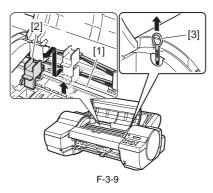
(4) The Roll Feed Unit [1] is preinstalled on the printer. Peel away the tape and remove the Roll Holder [2] and protective material from the Roll Feed Unit. Also remove the tape on the two Holder Stoppers [3] attached to the Roll Holder, and then remove the Holder Stoppers from the Roll Holder.



(5) Remove all cushioning materials and tape from the printer and accessories.



(6) Open the top cover, raise the carriage shaft belt stopper [1], and then pull it forward to remove.

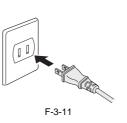


- MEMO: You will need the Belt Stopper if you move the printer to another location. Do not discard the Belt Stopper you have removed. When you open the Top Cover, you will find a Cleaning Brush [3] on the right side. Use this brush to clean inside the Top Cover.

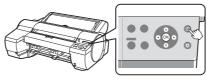
(7) Plug the power cord into the Power Socket on the back of the printer.



(8) Connect the power cord to the outlet.



(9) Set the printhead. Press the Power botton to power on the printer.

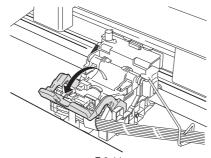


F-3-12

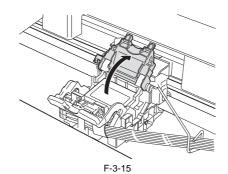
(10) When the message "Open Top Cover" is displayed, open the top cover.



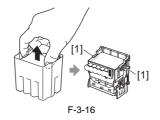
(11) Pull the printhead fixer lever forward to open it fully.



(12) Raise the printhead fixer cover to open it fully.

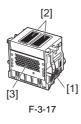


(13) Holding the knobs[1], take out the printhead from the case.

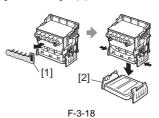


# A

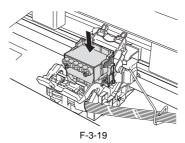
- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips [1]. Never touch the printhead nozzles [2] or the metal contacts [3]. The printhead can damage or a printing failure can occur. Do not reattach the removed protective caps. - Dispose of these parts following the local regulation.



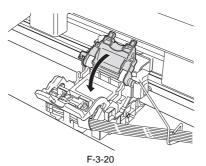
(14) Remove the orange protective cap 1 [1], and then pull the protective cap 2 [2] downward with the knob pressed.



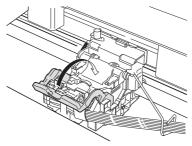
(15) Insert the print head in the carriage with the nozzles down and the contacts in the back. Insert it as far as it will go while taking care that the nozzles and contacts do not touch the carriage.



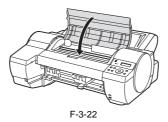
(16) Turn the printhead fixer cover forward to lock the printhead.



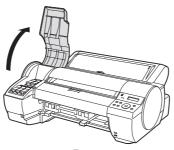
(17) Turn the printhead fixer lever backward unit it clicks.



F-3-21

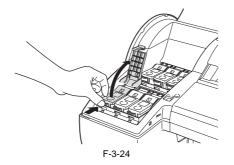


(19) Open the ink tank cover according to the message shown on the display.



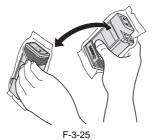
F-3-23

(20) Press the stopper at the top the ink tank lock lever, and then open the ink tank lock lever upward.



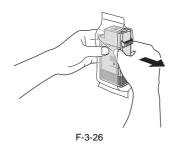
(18) Close the top cover.

(21) Before unpacking the ink tank you want to install, shake it slowly 7-8 times.



(22) Open the package and take out the ink tank by holding its knobs.

A

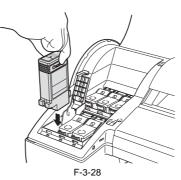


- Never touch the ink port [1] and contacts [2]. The peripheral parts may be stained, the ink tank may be broken, or a printing failure may occur.

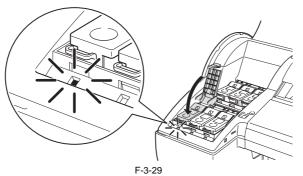


Becareful not to drop the ink tank once it is unpacked. The leaked ink may stain the peripheral area.
Do not remove and shake the ink once it is installed. Ink may spatter.

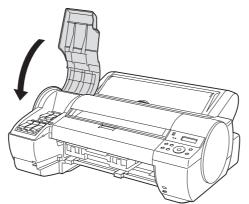
(23) Install the ink tank in the holder with the ink port facing down as shown.



(24) Close the ink tank lock lever until it clicks. Check that the Ink lamp is light in red.



(25) Repeat steps (20) to (24) to install all ink tanks.(26) Close the ink tank cover.



F-3-30

(27) When the printhead and all ink tanks have been installed, the message "Do Not Open Cover" appears on the display and initial ink filling requires about 14 minutes.

# MEMO:

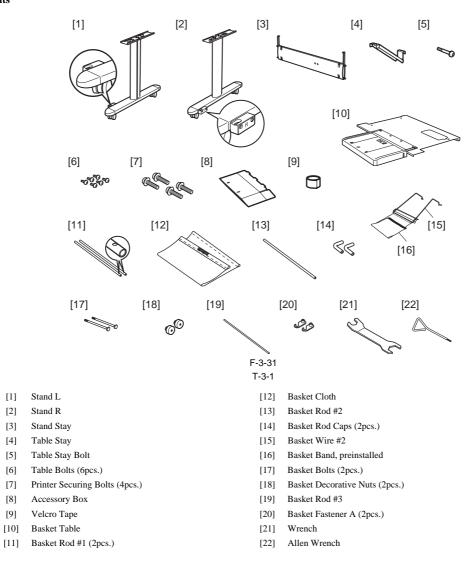
- Initial ink filling performed at printer installation consumes ink beween the ink tanks and printhead.
 - "80%" may be displayed as the remaining ink level immediately after initial ink filling. This is not a failure.

# 3.1.2.2 Installing the Stand



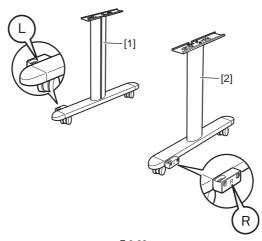
Stand assembly requires two or more people.

a. Package Contents



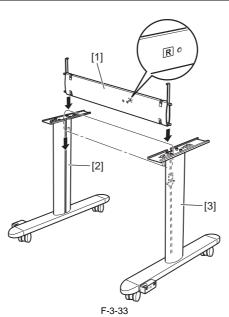
# b. Assembling the Stand

(1) Position the Stand L [1] and Stand R [2] so that the "L" and "R" marks are on the outside toward the front.

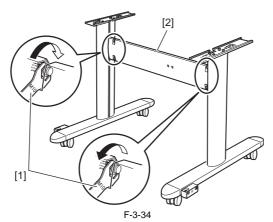




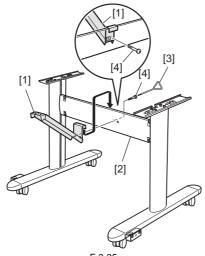
(2) Holding the Stand Stay [1] with the rear side (identified by an "R" sticker) facing back, insert it fully into the grooves of the Stand L [2] and Stand R [3] until it stops.



(3) Use the Wrench [1] to tighten the hex screws on both sides and secure the Stand Stay [2].

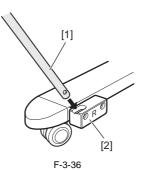


(4) Hook the Table Stay [1] on the Stand Stay [2] and tighten the Table Stay Bolt [4] with the Allen Wrench [3].

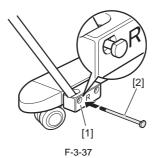




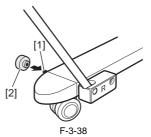
(5) Insert one Basket Rod #1 [1] into the hole of the Basket Fastener R [2] so that the hole of Basket Rod #1 [1] is aligned with the hole of the Basket Fastener R [2].



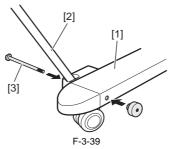
(6) Insert one Basket Bolt [2] into the hole of the Basket Fastener R [1], making the head of the Basket Bolt [2] fit the shape of the hole of the Basket Fastener R [1].



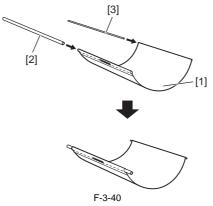
(7) Use one Basket Decorative Nut [2] to secure the Basket Bolt [1].



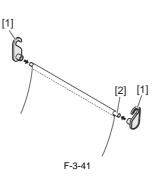
(8) Following steps (5)-(7), insert the other Basket Rod #1 [2] into the Stand L [1] and secure it with the Basket Bolt [3].



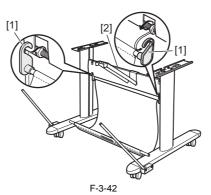
(9) With the Velcro Tape of the Basket Cloth [1] facing down, insert Basket Rod #2 [2] and Basket Rod #3 [3] through the holes on both ends of the Basket Cloth [1].



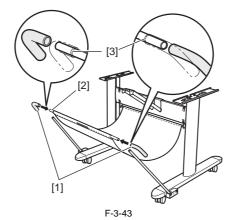
(10) Attach one Basket Fastener A [1] to each end of Basket Rod #3 [2].



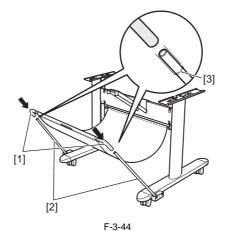
(11) Attach both Basket Fasteners A [1] to the Stand Stay [2].



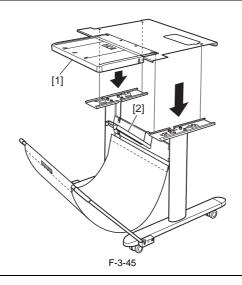
(12) Insert Basket Rod Caps [1] on both ends of Basket Rod #2 [2] until the guide lines [3] are no longer visible.



(13) Insert the Basket Rod Caps [1] onto the left and right Basket Rods #1 [2] until the guide lines [3] are no longer visible.

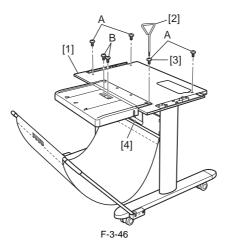




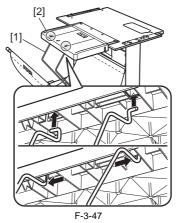


Be careful to avoid pinching your fingers between the Basket Table and Stand.

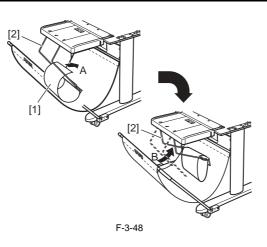
<sup>(15)</sup> Use the Allen Wrench [2] to tighten the Table Bolts [3] and secure the Basket Table [1] to the Stand and Table Stay [4]. Tighten the Table Bolts [3] in the order indicated; first at position A, and then at position B.



(16) With Basket Wire #2 [1] positioned so that the bend faces forward, insert it in the hole of the Basket Table [2] from below.



(17) Hang the Velcro Tape of the Basket Band [1] on the Basket Wire #2 [2] A. Push Basket Wire #2 [2] toward the back B.

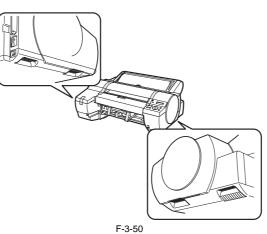


# c. Installing the Printer

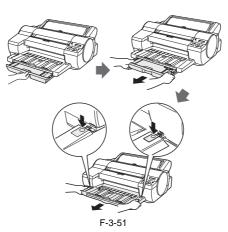
A- Moving the printer requires at least two people, one on either side. Be careful to avoid back strain and other injuries.



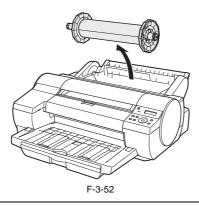
- When moving the printer, firmly grasp the Carrying handles under each side. Holding the printer at other positions is dangerous and poses a risk of injury and damage if the printer is dropped.



- Be sure to remove the Cassette and Output Tray before installing the printer. Grasp the handle on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the Cassette. Holding the Output Tray on both sides by the far end, press the button to release the lock, and then remove the Tray.



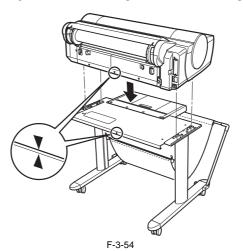
- If a roll is loaded, be sure to remove the roll before this procedure. Remove the Roll Holder from the Auto Roll Feed Unit. Fasten a paper band or the like around the paper to prevent the roll from unwinding.



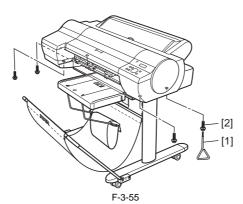
(1) Move the Stand into position and lock the front casters.



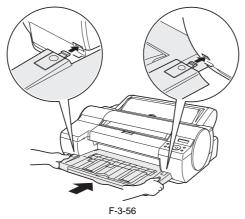
(2) While holding the Carrying handles on both sides, align 🔻 on the back of the printer with 🔺 of the Output Stacker as you set the printer down on the Stand.



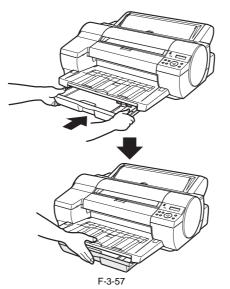
(3) Secure the printer to the stand by firmly tightening the two Printer Securing Bolts [2] on both sides with the Allen Wrench [1] from under the Output Stacker (four bolts in all).



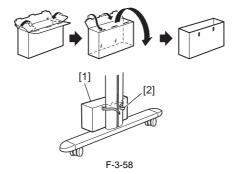
(4) Hold the Output Tray on both sides by the near end. Aligning the Output Tray with the guides, insert it into the printer until it locks in place.



(5) Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, insert it firmly into the printer.



(6) Assemble the Accessory Box [1] and attach it to the Stand with Velcro Tape [2].



Chapter 4 DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY

# Contents

| 4.1 Service Parts   | 4-1 |
|---|-----|
| 4.1.1 Service Parts   |     |
| 4.2 Disassembly/Reassembly  |     |
| 4.2.1 Disassembly/Reassembly                                      |     |
| 4.3 Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly                  |     |
| 4.3.1 Note on locations prohibited from disassembly               |     |
| 4.3.2 Moving the carriage manually                                |     |
| 4.3.3 Units requiring draining of ink                             |     |
| 4.3.4 External Covers   |     |
| 4.3.5 Driving Unit  |     |
| 4.3.6 Cutter  |     |
| 4.3.7 Carriage Unit   |     |
| 4.3.8 Pick-Up/Feeder Unit   |     |
| 4.3.9 Roll Feed Unit  |     |
| 4.3.10 Purge Unit   |     |
| 4.3.11 Waste Ink Collection Unit                                  |     |
| 4.3.12 Ink Tank Unit  |     |
| 4.3.13 Head Management Sensor                                     |     |
| 4.3.14 Multi Sensor   |     |
| 4.3.15 PCBs   |     |
| 4.3.16 Opening the Cap/Moving the Wiper Unit                      |     |
| 4.3.17 Opening/Closing the Ink Supply Valve                       |     |
| 4.3.18 Draining the Ink   |     |
| 4.4 Applying the Grease   |     |
| 4.4.1 Applying the Grease   |     |
| 4.5 Adjustment and Setup Items                                    |     |
| 4.5.1 Adjustment Item List  |     |
| 4.5.2 Procedure after Replacing the Carriage Unit or Multi Sensor |     |
| 4.5.3 Procedure after Replacing the Head Management Sensor        |     |

## 4.1 Service Parts

### 4.1.1 Service Parts

The service parts indicated below require careful handling.

**1. Keep all packages with the warning not to turn over.** Pay careful attention to all individually packaged service part (carriage unit, purge unit, ink tank unit, and other parts) boxes marked "This side up" and handle appropriately.



F-4-1

# 4.2 Disassembly/Reassembly

### 4.2.1 Disassembly/Reassembly

For the procedure for disassembly/reassembly of the components excluding the major components, refer to the paets catalog. Illustrations in the parts catalog are assigned illustration nombers according to the order in which parts are disassembled.

# 4.3 Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly

### 4.3.1 Note on locations prohibited from disassembly

# Â

Assemblies that are prohibited from disassembly and their adjustment outside the factory cannot be conducted are indicated by red screws. Don't never loosen or remove the red screw, because normal operation and print can't be done if it is loosened or removed.



F-4-2

### 4.3.2 Moving the carriage manually

# A

Move the carriage as required during disassembly/reassembly to prevent the carriage form contacting the parts to be removed. The carriage does not move when capped. When uncapping moving the carriage, refer to the procedures in DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY>Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly>Opening the Cap/Moving the Wiper Unit.

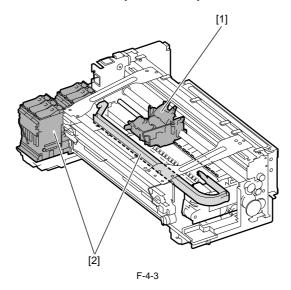
### 4.3.3 Units requiring draining of ink

When disassembling the following units of the ink passage, drain ink complate il to prevent it from leaking. For how to drain ink, refer to DISASSEMBLY/REAS-SEMBLY > Pointe to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Draining the Ink.

[1] Carriage unit

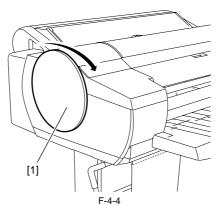
Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Carriage Unit. [2] Ink tank unit

Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Ink Tank Unit.

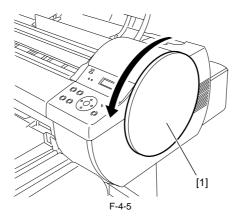


### 4.3.4 External Covers

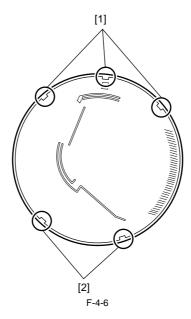
a) Left/right circle coverRemoving the left/right circle cover1) When removing the left circle cover [1], turn it in the direction of the arrow.



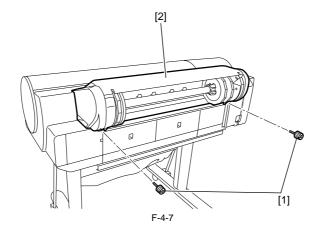
2) When removing the right circle cover [1], turn it in the direction of the arrow.



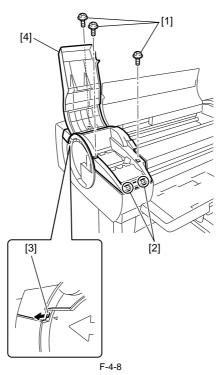
Attaching the left/right circle cover 1) When attacing the left circle cover, fit it in place with the three hooks [1] up and turn it toward the rear side of the printer. when attacing the right circle cover, fit it in place with the two hooks [2] up and turn it toward the rear side of the printer.



b) Roll Feed UnitRemoving the roll feed unit1) Remove two coin screws[1] to remove roll feed unit [2].

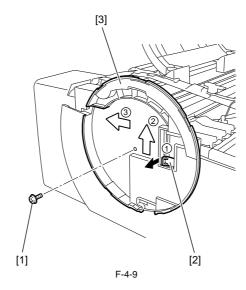


c) Tank cover
Removing the tank cover
1) When removing the tank cover[4], remove the left circle cover and then open the top cover.
2) Open the tank cover, remove the three screws[1], and then release the two hooks[2] while opening the hook[3] outward.

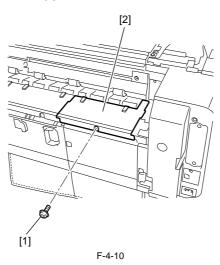


d) Left cover Removing the left cover

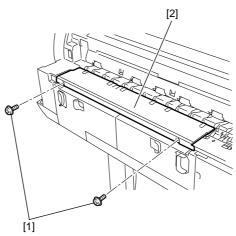
When removing the left cover[3], remove the left circle cover, open the top cover, and then remove the tank cover.
 Remove the screw[1], remove the hook[2], and slide the tank cover in the direction of arrow 2, and then slide it in the direction of arrow 3.



e) Lower rear left coverRemoving the lower rear left cover1) When removing the lower rear left cover[2], remove the screw[1] and then remove it.



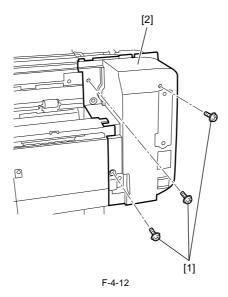
f) Lower rear coverRemoving the lower rear cover1) When removing the lower rear cover[2], remove the two screws[1] and then remove it.



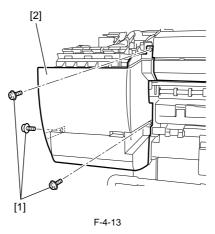
F-4-11

**g) Left rear cover** Removing the left rear cover

- When removing the left rear cover[2], open the top cover, and then remove the left circle cover, tank cover, and left rear cover.
   Remove the three screwa[1], and then remove the left rear cover[2].

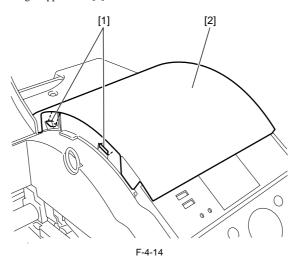


h) Left front cover
Removing the left front cover
1) When removing the left front cover[2], open the top cover, and then remove the left circle cover, tank cover, cassette, and output tray unit.
2) Rmove the three screws[1], and then remove the left front cover[2]

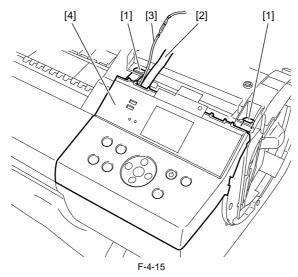


### i) Right upper cover

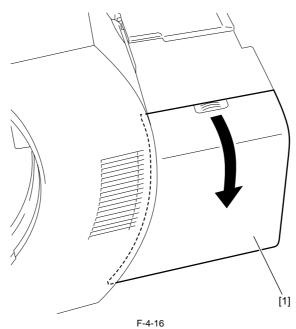
Removing the right upper cover 1) When removing the right upper cover[2], open the top cover, and then remove the right circle cover. 2) Release the two hooks[1], and then remove the right upper cover[2].



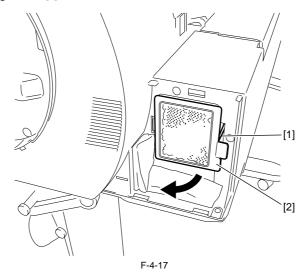
j) Operation panel
Removing the operation panel
1) When removing the operation panel[4], open the top cover, and then remove the right circle cover and right upper cover.
2) Remove the two hooks[1] and flexible cable[2] and earth cable[3], and then remove the operation panel[4].



k) Exhaust FilterRemoving the exhaust filter1) When removing the filter cover[1], push it in the direction of the arrow while pressing on the handhold.

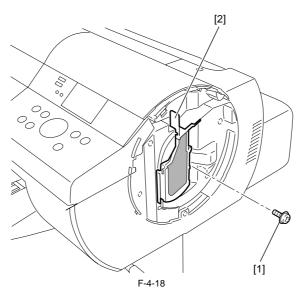


2) Remove the exhaust filter[2] while pushing the hook[1].

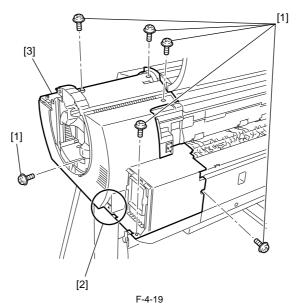


### l) Mist filter

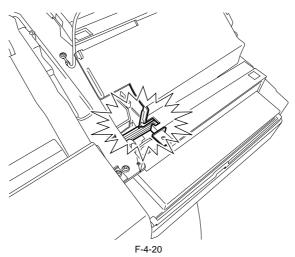
Removing the mist filter 1) When removing the mist filter[2], open the top cover, and then remove the right circle cover. 2) Removing the screw[1], and then remove the mist filter[2].



m) Right cover
Removing the right cover
1) When removing the right cover[3], open the top cover, and then remove the roll feed unit, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, exhaust filter, and lower rear cover.
2) Remove the six screws[1] and hook[2], and then remove the right cover[3].



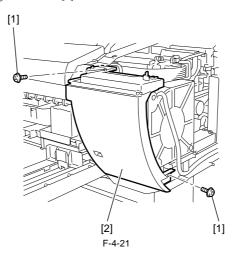
Note on attaching the right cover Be careful in attaching the right cover not to press the ink tubes with the edges of the cover.



n) Right front cover

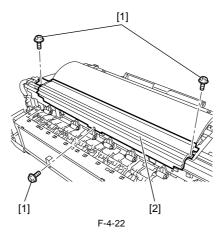
Removing the right front cover

1) When removing the right front cover[2], open the top cover, output tray unit, right circle cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, and right cover. 2) Remove the two screws[1], and then remove the right front cover[2].

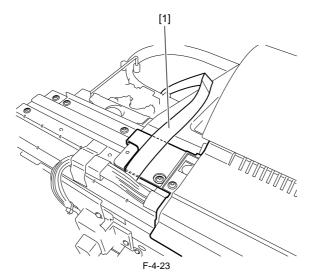


### o) Upper rear cover

a) Soper rear cover
b) When removing the upper rear cover
c) When removing the upper rear cover
c) When removing the upper rear cover
c) Remove the roll feed unit, left circle cover, tank cover, left cover, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panel, exhaust filter, right cover, and lower rear cover.
c) Remove the three screws[1], and then remove the upper rear cover[2].

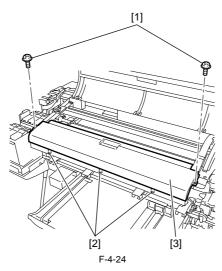


Note on attaching upper rear cover In attaching the upper rear cover, allow flexible cable[1] in the control area to pass over the cover.

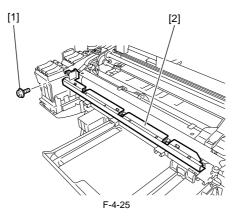


**p) Upper front cover** Removing the upper front cover

1) When removing the upper front cover[3],open the top cover, left circle cover, tank cover, right circle cover, right upper cover, and operation panel. 2) Remove the two screws[1],and then remove the upper front cover while releasing the three hooks[2].

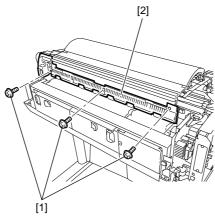


q) Lower front cover
Removing the lower front cover
1) When removing the lower front cover[3], open the top cover, left circle cover, tank cover, right circle cover, operation panel, and upper front cover.
2) Remove the screw[1], and then remove the lower front cover[2].



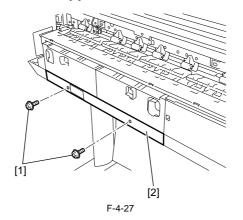
### r) Rear cover

Removing the rear cover
When removing the rear cover[2], open the top cover, left circle cover, tank cover, left cover, left rear cover, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, right cover, and lower rear cover.
Remove the three screws[1], and then remove the rear cover[2].



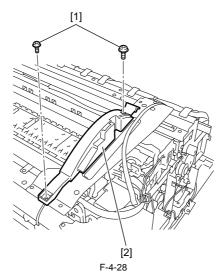
s) Lower back cover Removing the lower back cover

1) Wen removing the lower back cover[2], open the top cover, left circle cover, tank cover, left cover, left cover, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panerl, mist filter, filter cover, filter, right cover, and lower rear cover. 2) Remove the two screws[1], and then remove the lower back cover[2].



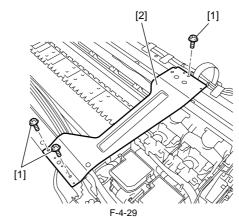
t) Cover guide
Removing the cover guide
1) When removing the cover guide[2], open the top cover, left circle cover, tank cover, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, right cover, and lower rear cover.

2) Remove the two screws[1], and then remove the cover guide[2].



### u) Cover support plate (right)

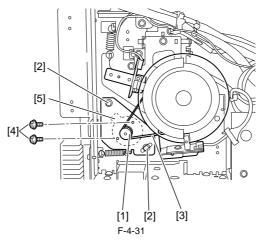
a) Cover support plate (right)
b) When removing the cover support plate(right)[2], open the top cover, left circle cover, tank cover, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, right cover, lower rear cover, cover guide, and upper rear cover.
c) Remove the three screws[1], and then remove the cover support plate(right)[2].



v) Cover support plate (left) Rmoving the cover support plate (left) When removing the cover support plate (left)[2], open the top cover, left circle cover, tank cover, right circle cover, rightupper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, right cover, lower rear cover, and upper rear cover.
 Remove the three screws[1], and then remove the cover support plate (left)[2].

### 4.3.5 Driving Unit

- a) Feed motor
  Removing the feed motor
  1) When removing the feed motor[1], remove the main controller support plate.
  Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > PCBs
  2) Loosen the two screws[2], and then remove the timing belt[3] from the pulley.
  3) Remove the two screws[4] and connector[5], and then remove the feed motor[1].

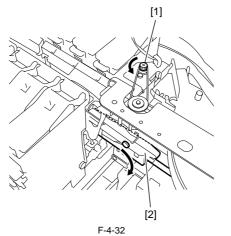


Note on mounting the feed motor When mounting the feed motor, attach the timing belt[3] on the pulley, and then tighten the two screws[2].

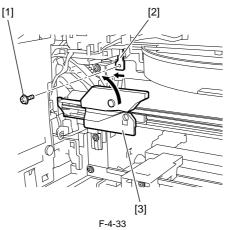
### 4.3.6 Cutter

### a) Removing the cutter unit

 When removing the cutter unit, open the top cover, and then remove the cassette, output tray unit, left and right circle covers, tank cover, lower rear cover, left and right covers, right upper cover, operation panel, left and right front cover, upper front cover, mist filter, filter cover, filter, and lower front cover. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Covers.
 Turn the motor pulley[1] in the direction of the arrow to lower the cutter unit[2].

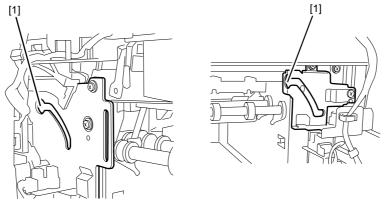


3) Remove the screw[1], shift the stopper[2] to the left, and the slide the cutter unit[3] to upper left to remove it.



b) Points to note on Disassembly an Reassembly of Cutter unit

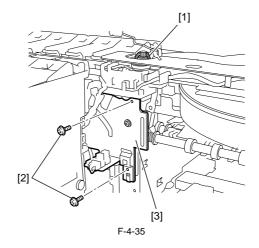
1) When disassembling or reassembling the cutter unit, align the cutter unit roller with the grooves[1] in the cutter lifter unit and cutter drive unit.



F-4-34

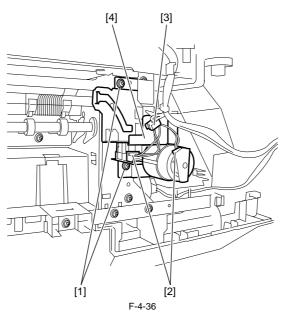
c) Removing the cutter lifter unit

Remove the cutter unit.
 Remove the belt[1], two screws[2], and harness, and then remove the cutter lifter unit[3].



### d) Removing the cutter drive unit

Remove the cutter unit.
 Remove two screws[1] and two connectors[2] and free the harness from harness guide [3] to remove cutter drive unit[4].



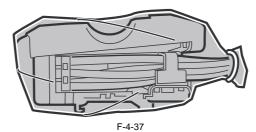
### 4.3.7 Carriage Unit

### a) Removeing the carriage unit

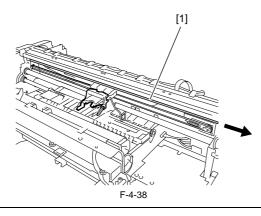
1) Drain the ink. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Draining the Ink.

- 2) Turn off the power, and then move the carriage over the platen. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Opening the Cap/Moving the Wiper Unit.
- 3) Remove the printhead.

4) Remove the joint of the ink tube unit. Wrap the removed joint with a plastic bag or other covering so that ink does not splashes, then close the plastic bag.



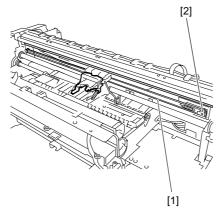
5) Remove the linear scale[1] from the right clamp plate's spring, and then remove it rightward.



## A

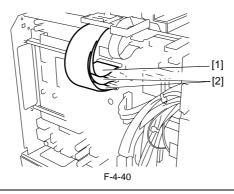
When removing the linear scale, take care not to damage or stain it. The stained or damaged liner plate can cause malfunction.

6) While sliding the pulley[2] to the left, remove the carriage belt[1]. Tie the removed belt lightly on the unit.



F-4-39

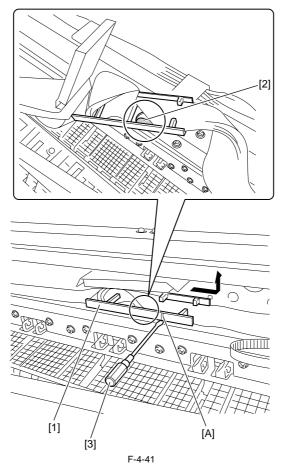
7) Disconnect the connector[1] and two connectors[2] of the flexible cables on the main controller PCB.



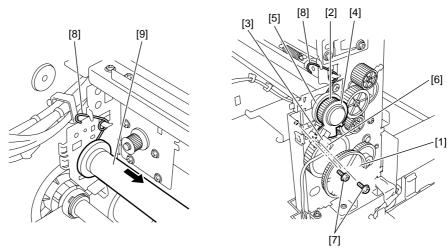
The flexible cable connectors[2] are provided with a locking mechanism. When disconnecting or reconnecting the flexible cable, be sure to release the lock. Other

### erwise, the flexible cable can damage, resulting in malfunction.

8) Insert flat-head screwdriver[3] into the part shown to release hook[2] and then remove flexible cable retainer[1]. (If flexible cable retainer[1] is marked with index[A], insert the flat-head screw driver to meet the index.)

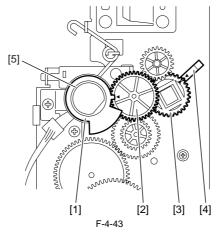


9) Turn the gear[1] so that the sensor flag of the lift gear[2] leaves the interrupt position of the lift cam sensor[3], then remove the ring[4], the lift gear[2] and the lift cam[5]. Disconnect the connector[6], remove the two screws[7], and then remove the lift cam sensor[3]. Remove the two torsion springs[8], pull out the carriage rail[9] from the right side of the printer, and then remove the carriage.

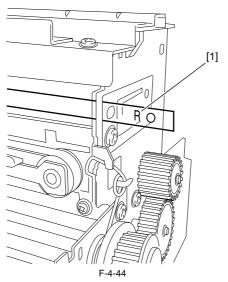


F-4-42

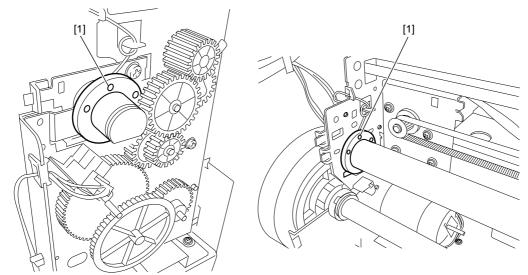
b) Points to Note on disassembly and Reassembly of Carriage Unit
1) Align the mark on the gear[3] with the mark on the bushing[4]. Align the mark on the lift gear[1] with the mark on the gear[2] to remove the ring[5].



2) Install the linear scale with its R-mark [1] located on the right side of the unit.

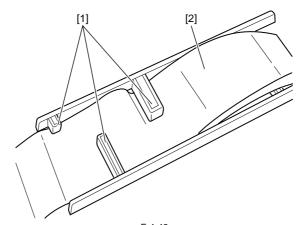


3) Install left right lift cam [1] so its circular dent comes in the direction as shown (right side of the unit).



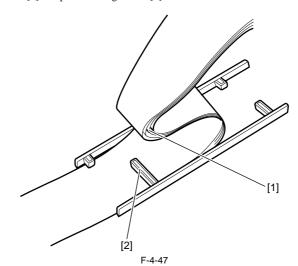
F-4-45

c) Note on attaching the flexible cable1) Insert flexible cable[2] through three claws[1] in the flexible cable retainer.

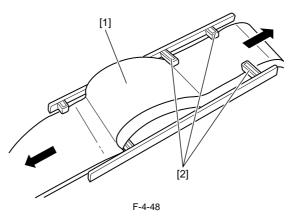


F-4-46

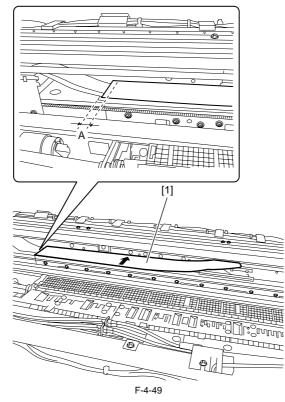
2) Lightly fold the flexible cable in its marked area[1] and pass it through claws[2].



3) Insert folded flexible cable [1] through three claws [2].4) Pull flexible cable [1] lightly from both sides to remove slacks in it.



5) Having installed the flexible cable retainer, align and flatten the flexible cables.6) Attach flexible guide sheet [1] over flexible cable [2] with its left end aligned with the limit position shown and its rear kept in contact with the side plate.



### d) Multi Sensor Recalibration

Since multi sensors have individual electrical specificity, the following are recalibrated at the factory, namely, the optical axis of the sensor, the sensor gain for measuring the printhead height and sensor reproduction. Accordingly, carry out the following adjustments in the service mode whenever replacing the carriage unit or multi sensor.

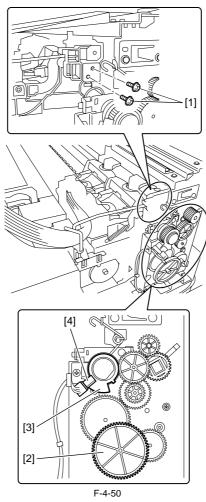
\* The multi sensor reference plate must be replaced at the same time whenever the carriage or the multi sensor is being replaced.

- Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > GAP CALIB.

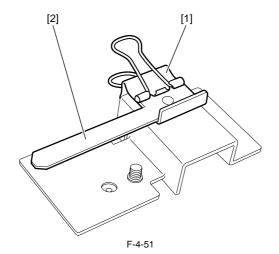
- Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > PRINT PATTERN > OPTICAL AXIS Media type : Photo glossy paper Media size : Media having a width equal toor larger then that of A2-size paper

e) Adjusting the wire roller
 To prevent the wire roller mounted on the carriage from contacting the duct and others during carriage operation, perform the following adjusutment whenever tou have removed or replaced the carriage unit. This adjustment is not required when you have replaced only the multi sensor.
 \* Make adjustments with the carriage lock released.
 \* Make adjustments with the tube disconnected from the tube guide.

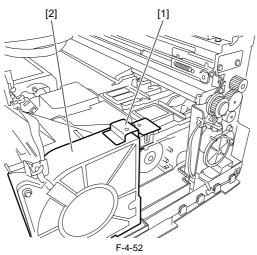
- Remove the ink tube from the wire guide.
   Loosen the two screws[1]
   Turn the gear[2] until the lift cam flag[3] reaches the position shown below.
   \* Bottom position where the sensor[4] light is blocked by the flag (lowest position to which the carriage unit descends)



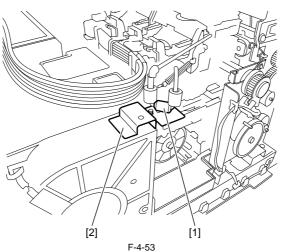
4) Remove clip [1] and roller retainer [2] from the carriage wire tool.



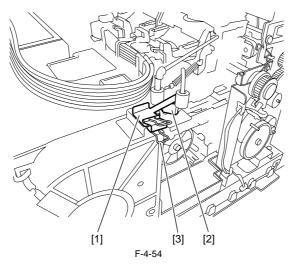
5) Install carriage wire tool [1] in position with its leaf spring being attached to the top of mist fan [2].



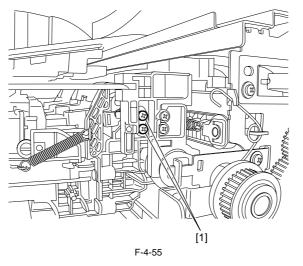
6) Moving the carriage, adjust the height of the wire guide to bring its roller [1] into contact with the top of carriage wire tool [2].



7) Secure roller retainer [1] with clip [3] in contact with the top of roller [2].



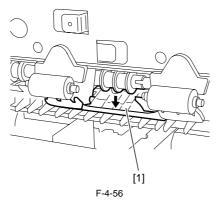
8) Retighten two screws [1] loosened in Step 2) to secure the wire guide.



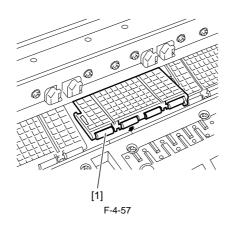
9) Pass the ink tubes through the wire guides.

### 4.3.8 Pick-Up/Feeder Unit

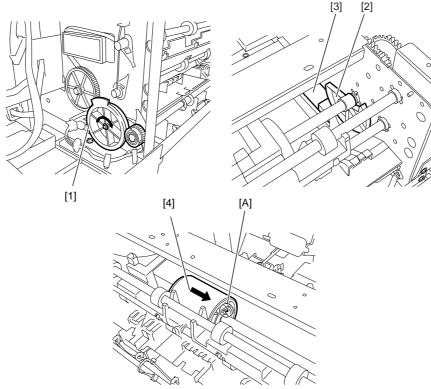
- a) Removing the pinch roller1) Remove the rear cover.2) When removing the pinch roller, press down the pinch roller unit[1] in the direction of the arrow.



3) Remove the pinch roller[1].

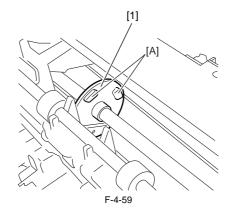


b) Removing the cassette pick-up roller
1) When removing the cassette pick-up roller, first remove the back cover and cassette.
2) Then the gear[1] so that the pick-up cam[2] pressea down the arm[3] to the lowest position. Release the hook[A], and then remove the cassette pick-up roller[4] while sliding it in the direction of the arrow.

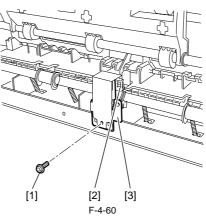


### c) Precaution for mounting the roller

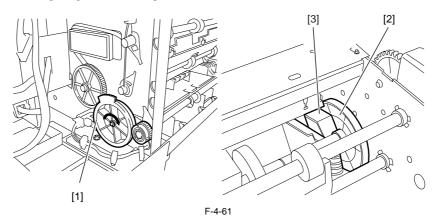
When mounting the cassette pick-up roller, fit the projection[A] on the cassette pick-up roller holder[1] in the grooves in the cassette pick-up roller.



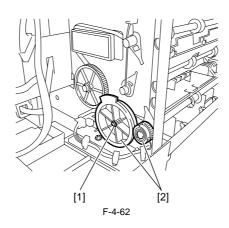
d) Removing the cassette separation roller
1) When removing the cassette separation roller, first open the top cover, and then remove the back cover, left and right covers, tank cover, right upper cover, operation panel mist filter, filter cover, filter, left and right covers, lower rear cover, and lower back cover.
2) Remove the cassette pick-up sensor[3] by removing the screw[1] and connector[2].



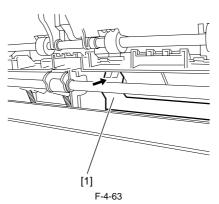
3) Then the gear[1] to make sure that the pick-up cam[2] is at the position shown below(the arm[3] is raised).



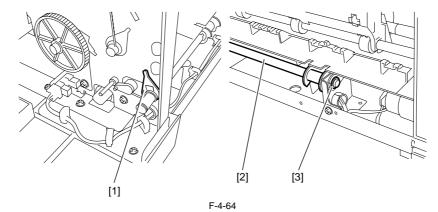
4) Remove one ring[1] and two gears[2].



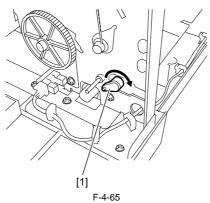
5) Press up the guide[1] in the direction of the arrow.



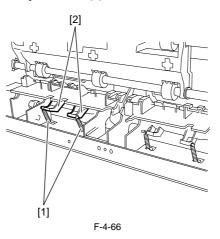
6) Remove the bearing[1] and ring[3], and then remove the separation roller shaft[2].



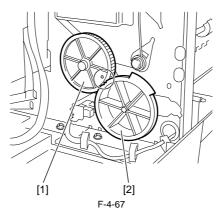
7) Remove the lever[1] while turning it in the direction of the arrow.



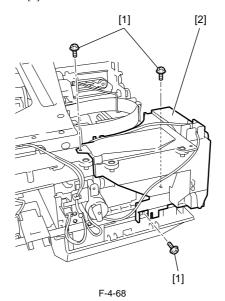
8) Remove the two springs[1], and then remove the cassette separation roller[2].



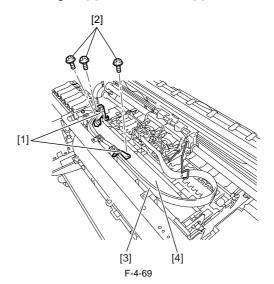
# e) Precaution for mounting the cassette separation roller1) Align the mark on the gear[1] with the mark on the gear[2].



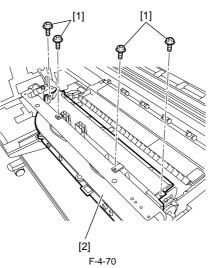
f) Removing the spur unit
1) When removing the spur unit, first open the top cover, and then remove the left and right circle covers, tank cover, right upper cover, operation panel, lower rear cover, right cover, right front cover, upper front cover, lower front cover, cover guide, upper rear cover, and left and right cover mounting plates. Refer to DISAS-SEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Covers.
2) Remove the three screws[1], and then remove the mist fan[2].



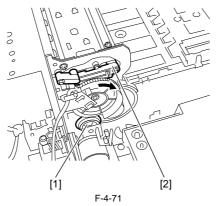
3) Remove the three screws[2], and then remove the two tube guides[1]. Remove the ink tube[3] from the front duct[4].



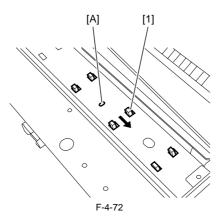
4) Remove the front duct[2] by removing the four screws[1].



5) Turn the pulley[1] in the direction of the arrow so that the spur unit[2] is at the top position.



6) While pressing down the protrusion[A], slide the spur unit[1] in the direction of the arrow to remove it.

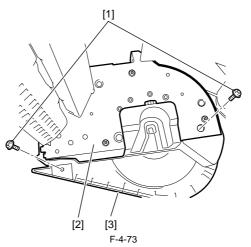


### g) Handling the Feed Roller

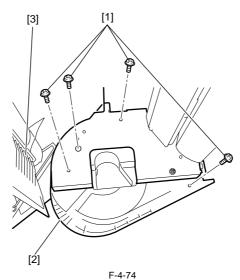
The feed roller is an important mechanical component of the printer. Follow the precaution below when handring it.
Do not touch the feed roller surface(coated surface).
Do not scratch or dent the feed roller.

### 4.3.9 Roll Feed Unit

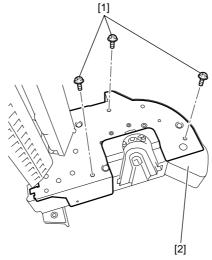
a) Removing the roll motor
1) When removing the roll motor, remove the roll feed unit[2] from the main body, and then remove the right cover[3] by removing the two screws[1]



2) Remove the four screws[1], and then remove the left cover[2] and paper tray[3].

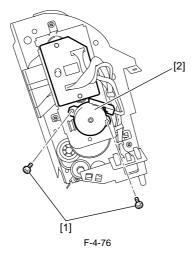


3) Remove the three screws[1], and then remove the right inner cover[2].

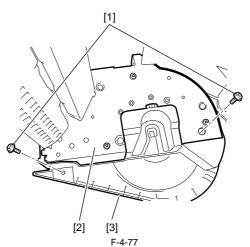


F-4-75

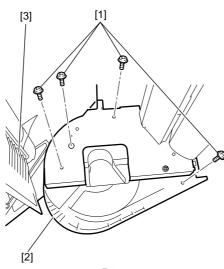
4) Remove the two screws[1], and then remove the roll motor[2].



b) Removing the roll feed unit1) When removing the roll motor, remove the roll feed unit[2] from the main body, and then remove the right cover[3] by removing the two screws[1].

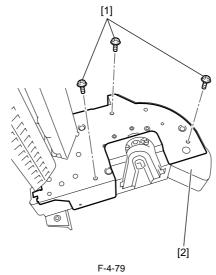


2) Remove the four screws[1], and then remove the left cover[2] and paper tray[3].

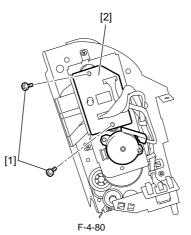


F-4-78

3) Remove the three screws[1], and then remove the right inner cover[2].

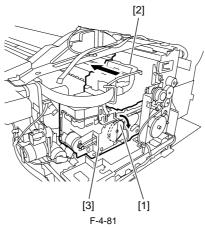


4) Remove the two screws[1], and then remove the roll feed unit PCB[2].

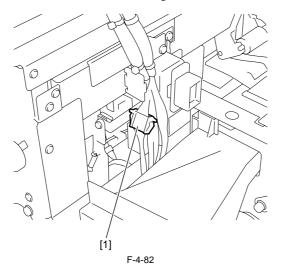


# 4.3.10 Purge Unit

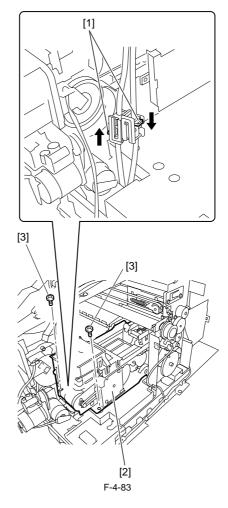
a) Removing the purge unit
1) Turn the gear[1] of the purge unit[3] in the direction of the arrow to unlock and uncap the carriage. Next, move the carriage[2] onto the platen.



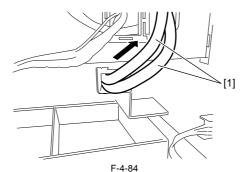
2) Remove connector[1] from the rear of the unit to free the harness from the harness guide.



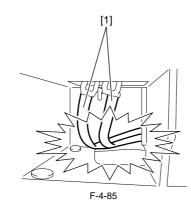
3) Remove three screws[3] and press two claws[1] in the joint of the waste ink tube in the arrow direction to remove purge unit 2].



b) Precaution for mounting the purge unit
1) When mounting the purge unit, pull out the waste ink tube[1] from the back of the printer to the position where the marking is visible. It the waste ink tube is not pulled out to the marking position, it may bend and cause ink leakage.
Make sure that there is no break or the twist of the waste ink tube from the front of the printer.

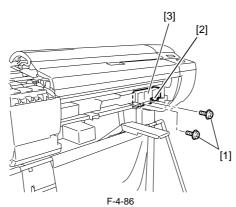


2) Check waste ink tube[1] from the front of the unit to make sure that it is not broken or twisted.

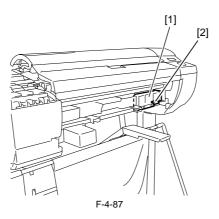


#### 4.3.11 Waste Ink Collection Unit

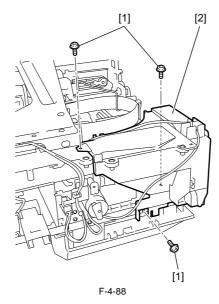
- a) Removing the waste ink box1) When removing the waste ink box, first remove the cassette and output tray.
- 2) Remove the two screws[1] and connector cover[2].



3) Disconnect the connector[2], and then remove the waste ink box[1].



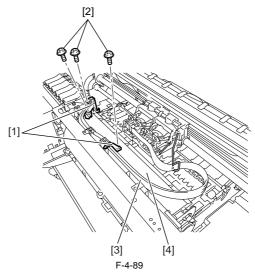
b) Removing the mist fan 1) When removing the mist fan, first open the top cover, and then remove the output tray, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, right cover, and right front cover. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Cover. 2) Remopve the three screwas[1] and disconnect the connector, and then remove the mist fan[2].



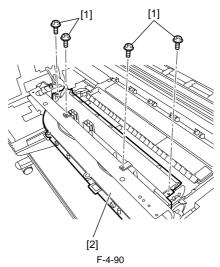
#### c) Removing the platen duct

1) When removing the platen duct, first open the top cover, and then remove the output tray, maintenance cartridge, waste ink box, left and right circle cover, tank cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, right cover, right front cover, and mist fan. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Cover.

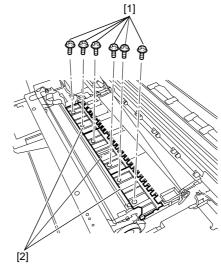
2) Remove the three screws[2], and then remove the two tube guide[1]. Remove the ink tube[3] from the guide of the front duct[4].



3) Remove the front duct[2] by removing the four screws[1].

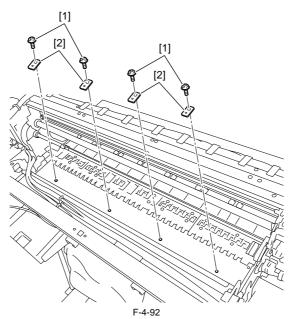


4) Remove the platen(front)[2] by removing the six screws[1].

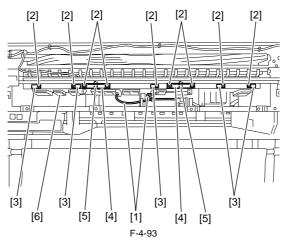


F-4-91

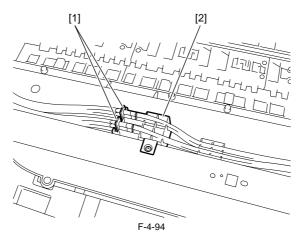
5) Remove the four screws[1] and four bushings[2].



6) Disconnect the two waste ink tubes[3] and remove the nine screws[2] and five bushings[3] and two bushing covers[4] and two springs[5], and then remove the platen duct[6].

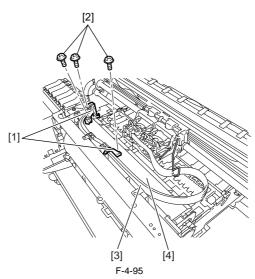


d) Note on attaching ink tubes to the front duct In attaching ink tubes to the front guides, insert joint [1] into guide [2] first and then attach them to the guides, making sure that the tubes are not broken or twisted. The marks appearing on the tubes were used for factory assembly purposes and are not used for servicing.

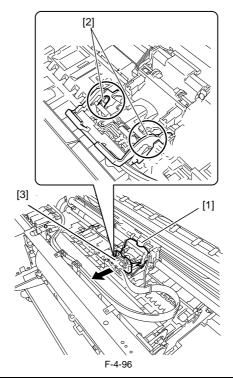


#### 4.3.12 Ink Tank Unit

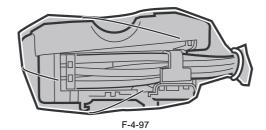
- a) Removing the ink tank unit
   1) Drain the ink. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Draining the ink.
   2) Remove the output tray, left and right circle covers, tank cover, left and right covers, left and right front covers, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, lower rear cover, upper front cover, and lower front cover. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Cover.
   a) More the output tray is to be contained with the lower front cover. With the cover of the provide the p
  - a) Move the carriage unit to the center. Refer to 1.1.9.a "Removing the Purge Unit".
    4) Remove the three screws[2], and then remove the two tube guide[1].



5) Remove the two link levers[2] from the carriage unit[1], and then remove the joint base[3].

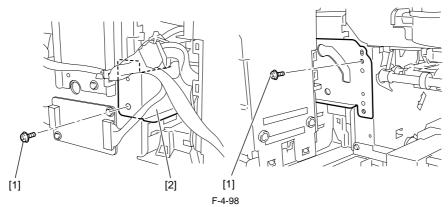


# Put the removed joint base in a plastic bag so that ink does not splash.

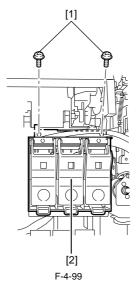


6) Remove the cutter unit and cutter lifter unit. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Point to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Cutter

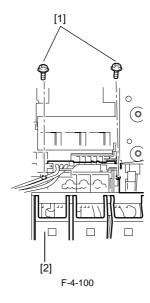
7) Remove the two screws[1], and then remove the support plate[2].



8) Remove the two screws[1] and one joint[3], and then remove the ink tank unit R[2].

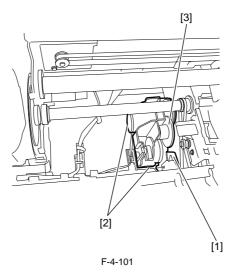


9) Remove the two screws[1] and one joint[3], and then remove the ink tank unit F[2].



b) Removing the valve motor unit.

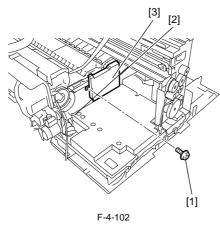
When removing the valve motor unit, remove the ink tank cover.
 Remove the two screws[1], disconnect the the two connectors[2], and then remove the valve motor unit[3].



## 4.3.13 Head Management Sensor

#### a) Removing the head management sensor

1) Remove the screw[1], disconnect the connector[2], and then remove the head management sensor[3].



#### b) Procedure after replacing the head management sensor

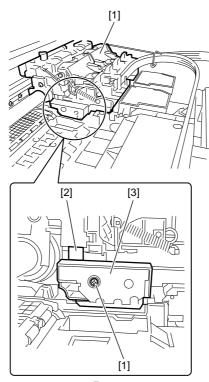
Since the distance between the head management sensor and the carriage unit varies among printers, the optical axis is factory-adjusted to adjust the non-discharging detection position. When you have replaced the head management sensor or performed assembly/reassembly of surrounding parts that can change the distance between the head management sensor and the carriage unit, reasjustment is required. Peform the readjustment in the service mode.

Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > NOZZLE CHK POS.

#### 4.3.14 Multi Sensor

#### a) Removing the multi sensor

1) Remove the screw[1], disconnect the flexible cable[2], and then remove the multi sensor[3].



F-4-103

Since multi sensors have individual electrical specificity, the following are recalibrated at the factory, namely, the optical axis of the sensor, the sensor gain for measuring the printhead height and sensor reproduction. Accordingly, carry out the following adjustments in the service mode whenever replacing the carriage unit or multi sensor.

\* The multi sensor reference plate must be replaced at the same time whenever the carriage or the multi sensor is being replaced.

\* When replacing the carriage unit, refer to Adjustment and Setup > Procedure after Removing or Replacing the Carriage Unit.

- Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > GAP CALIB.

- Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > PRINT PATTERN > OPTICAL AXIS Media type : Photo glossy paper Media size : Media having a width equal toor larger then that of A2-size paper

4-40

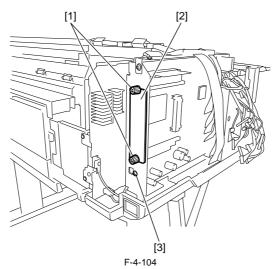
#### 4.3.15 PCBs

Do not replace the main controller PCB and maintenance cartridge relay PCB(ROM board) at the same time. These PCBs store important data such as settings and carriage drive time. Before replacement of enther PCB, the data stored in it is move to the other PCB through internal communication so that it can be taken over to the new PCB automatically. This is the reason whey the two PCBs should not be replaced at the same time. If you want to replace both PCBs at the same time, first carry out the procedure "a" and then carry out the procedure "b". After replacing whth the maintemance controller PCB or maintenance cartridge relay PCB which are supplied as service parts, check that the firmware to the latest

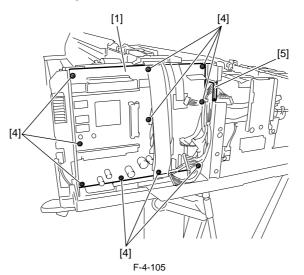
version.

#### a) Removing the main controller PCB

1) To remove the main controller PCB, open the top cover and remove the roll feed unit, left circle cover, tank cover, left cover, lower rear cover, lower rear left cover and left rear cover.
See DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Covers.
2) Remove all connectors from the main controller PCB.
3) Remove two coin screws[1], interface cover[2] and screw[3] in this order.

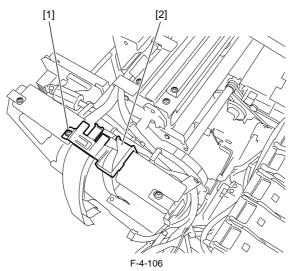


4) Remove the ten screws[4] and free the harness from harness guide[5] to remove the main controller PCB[1].

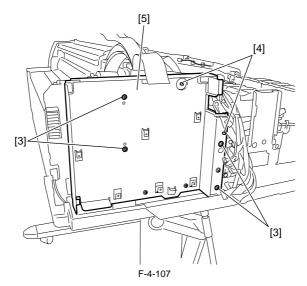


#### b) Removing the main controller mounting plate

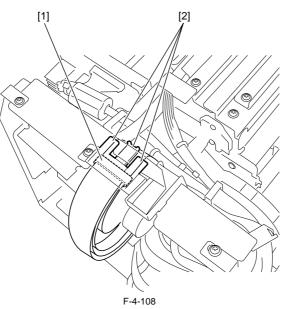
- Remove the main controller PCB.
   Free the harness from the harness guide.
   Remove screw [1] and remove the flexible guide [2].



4) Remove the four screws [1] and two hooks [2] from the harness guide and remove main controller mounting plate [3].



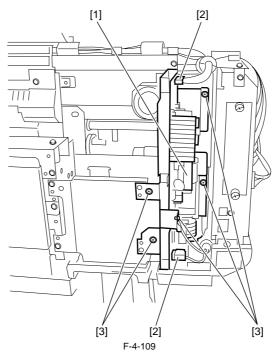
c) Note on installing the cable holder In installing the cable holder, secure ferrite core [1] to the flexible cable on the carriage with the cable holder before hooking the flexible cable from the operation panel at three claws [2].



#### d) Removing the power supply PCB

1) To remove the power supply PCB, open the top cover and remove the roll feed unit, left circle cover, tank cover, left cover, lower rear cover, lower rear left cover and left rear cover

See DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Covers. 2) Disconnect the two connectors[2] from power supply PCB[1]. 3) Remove the five screws[3] and remove the power supply PCB[1] together with the mounting plate.



#### e) Procedure for replacing the maintenance cartridge relay PCB(ROM board) 1)

Turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

2) Replace the maintenance cartridge relay PCB.

3) Plug the power cord to the outlet, and then turn on the printer whth the PAPER SOURCE button and INFORMATION button pressed down. (The printer will start up in the PCB Replacement mode.)

4) Check that "Initializing" appears on the display, and then release the buttons. (When the printer enters the PCB Replacement mode, the message lamp goes on.)
5) What until "REPLACE MODE" appears on the display.
6) Select "MC BOARD", and then press the ok button

7) Check that "TURN POWER OFF" appears on the display, and then turn off the printer.

8) Turn on the printer.

9) Check the firmware version. If the firmware is not the latest version, update.

# f) Procedure for replacing the main controller PCB1) Turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.2) Replace the main controller PCB.

3) Plug the power cord to the outlet, and then turn on the printer whth the PAPER SOURCE button and INFORMATION button pressed down. (The printer will start up in the PCB Replacement mode.)

4) Check that "Initializing" appears on the display, and then release the buttons. (When the printer enters the PCB Replacement mode, the message lamp goes on.)
5) What until "REPLACE MODE" appears on the display.
6) Select "MC BOARD", and then press the ok button
7) Check that "TURN POWER OFF" appears on the display, and then turn off the printer.

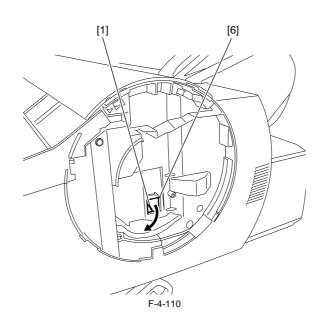
8) Turn on the printer.

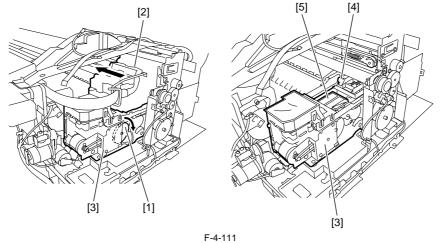
9) Check the firmware version. If the firmware is not the latest version, update.

### 4.3.16 Opening the Cap/Moving the Wiper Unit

This section explains how to open the cap and ink supply valve manualy. To move the carriage whth the power off, you need to release the carriage lock pin and cap manually.

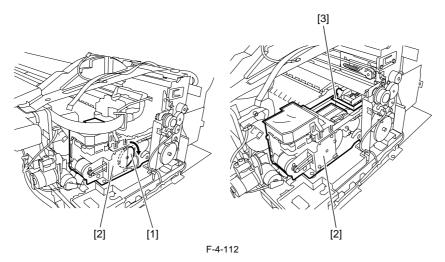
1. Opening the Cap/Releasing the Carriage Lock Pin 1) Remove the right circle cover, mist filter. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Cover. 2) Turn the gear[1] of the purge unit[3] in the direction of the arrow from the hole[6] of the right cover. The cap[5] and lock pin[4] move down, allowing you to move the carriage[2].





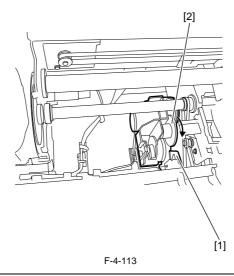
#### 2. Moving the Wiper Unit

1) Open the top cover, and then remove the roll feed unit, output guide, right circle cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, exhaust filter, right cover, right front cover, cover guide, cover plate(right). Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > External Cover. 2) To move the wiper unit[3], turn the gear[1] of the purge unit[2] in the direction of the arrow.



## 4.3.17 Opening/Closing the Ink Supply Valve

Open the top cover, and then remove the left circle cover and tank cover.
 To open the ink supply valve, turn the cam [2] in the direction of the arrow and press the link [1].



## Â

If the tube is full of ink, releasing the printhead lock lever with the ink supply valve open can cause the ink to flow back to the ink supply unit, resulting in leakage of ink from the ink supply needle.
 If the ink supply valve is held open due to a problem such as a valve motor error(E02D06), remove the valve motor unit(refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly andReassembly > Ink Tank Unit) and close the ink supply valve.

## 4.3.18 Draining the Ink

There are two methods of removing the ink, amanual method and an automatic method. There the ink is drained, the ink inside the ink passage totaling about36g(about 6g x 6colors) is drained as waste ink.

To prevent ink leakage, be sure to drain the ink inside the ink passage before transporting the printer again.

#### 1. Automatic ink drainage

To perform "automatic ink drainage", select "Main Menu" > "Maintenance" > "Move Printer".

## Â

Perform automatic ink drainage again if a power outage or other cause shuts off the power during the operation for automatic ink drainage.

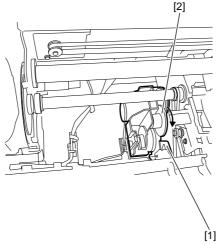
#### 2. Manual Ink Drainage

Perform manual ink drainage when the printer cannot be powered due to a printer's electrcal part failure, firmware error, or power supply problem.

#### Manual Ink Drainage Procedure

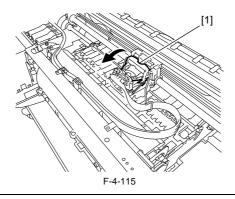
 Open the top cover, and then remove the left and right circle covers, tank cover, right upper cover, operation panel, mist filter, filter cover, filter, and right cover.
 Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Pointe toNote on Disassembly andReassembly > External Cover.
 Move the carriage onto the platen. Refer to DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Opening the Cap/ Move the Wiper Unit.

3) Turn the cam[2] in the direction of the arrow, and then press the link[1] to open the ink supply valve.



F-4-114

4) Release both printhead fixer levers[1] to flow the ink from inside the ink tube to the sub-buffer of the ink tank unit.



The sub-buffer can contain 22g of ink. About 6g of ink flows into the sub-buffer each time manual ink drainage is performed.

5) Make sure that the ink has been drained completely, turn the cam to close the ink supply valve.

## 4.4 Applying the Grease

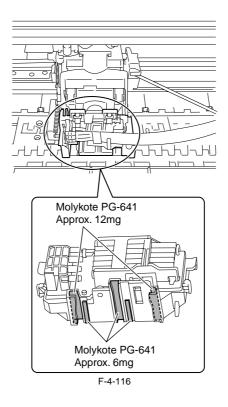
## 4.4.1 Applying the Grease

Some parts require application of grease when replaced. Apply the grease(special tool) listed below. Smear the grease lightly and evenly with a flat brush or the like. For the printer disassembly/reassembly method, refer to "DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY" and "parts catalog".

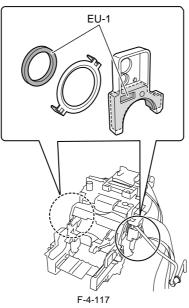
Do not apply the grease to locations in which not designated grease may cause poor print quality. Take particular care that grease do not get onto the wiper, cap, and linear scale.

| No. | Location                        | Grease type     | Quantity      |  |
|-----|---------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|--|
| 1   | Joint base                      | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.6/12mg |  |
| 2   | Shaft cleaner/oil pad           | EU-1            | soaks enough. |  |
| 3   | Eject roller bearing            | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.12mg   |  |
| 4   | Eject roller center bearing     | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.12mg   |  |
| 5   | Spur cam                        | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.20mg   |  |
| 6   | Pick-up cam                     | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.12mg   |  |
| 7   | Separation cam gear             | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.20mg   |  |
| 8   | Release lever                   | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.12mg   |  |
| 9   | Return lever arm                | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.12mg   |  |
| 10  | Paper feed inner guide          | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.12mg   |  |
| 11  | Pinch roller unit release shaft | Molykote PG-641 | Approx.12mg   |  |

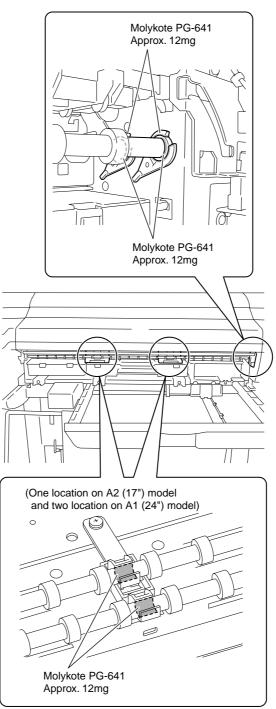
## a) Carriage unit 1) Joint base



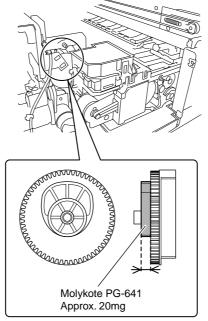
2) Shaft cleaner/oil pad



b) Eject roller unit
3) Eject roller bearing
4) Eject roller center bearing

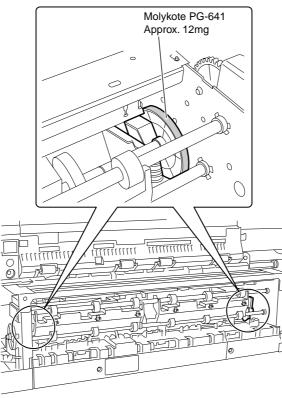


F-4-118

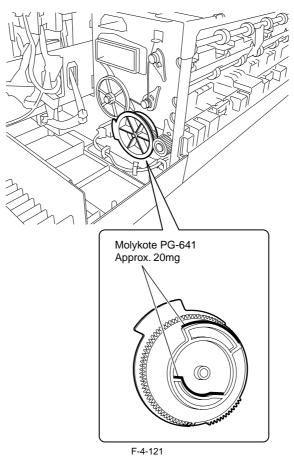


F-4-119

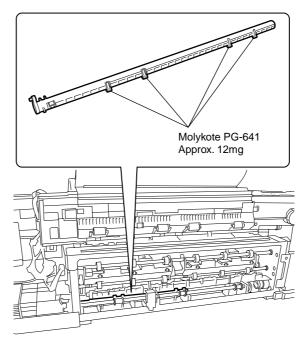
## **d) Pick-up unit** 6) Pick-up cam



F-4-120

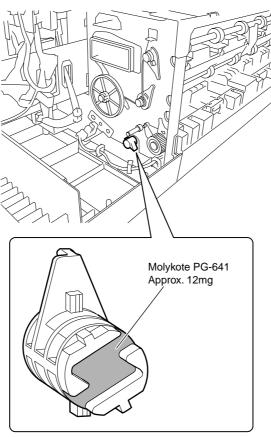


8) Release lever



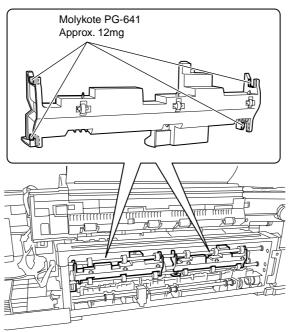
F-4-122

## 9) Return lever arm



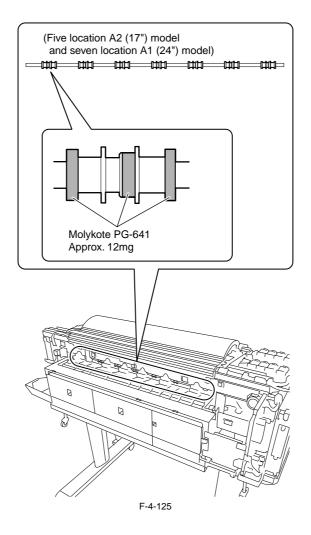
F-4-123

10) Paper feed inner guide



F-4-124

e) Pinch roller unit11) Pinch roller unit release shaft



## 4.5 Adjustment and Setup Items

## 4.5.1 Adjustment Item List

The following adjustment procedures need to be performed when parts have been replaced or remove and then reinstalled:

| T-4-1                                |  |  |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Adjustment item                      | Adjustment timing                          |  |  |
| Multi sensor recalibration           | Multi sensor replacement/removal           |  |  |
|                                      | Carriage unit replacement/removal          |  |  |
| Adjusting wire roller                | Wire guide replacement/removal             |  |  |
|                                      | Carriage unit replacement/removal          |  |  |
| Head management sensor recalibration | Head management sensor replacement/removal |  |  |
|                                      | Carriage unit replacement/removal          |  |  |

#### 4.5.2 Procedure after Replacing the Carriage Unit or Multi Sensor

#### a) Multi Sensor Recalibration

Since multi sensors have individual electrical specificity, the following are recalibrated at the factory, namely, the optical axis of the sensor, the sensor gain for measuring the printhead height and sensor reproduction. Accordingly, carry out the following adjustments in the service mode whenever replacing the carriage unit or multi sensor.

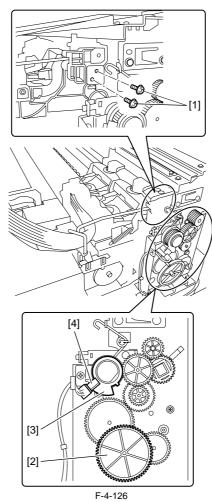
- Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > GAP CALIB.

 Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > PRINT PATTERN > OPTICAL AXIS Media type : Photo glossy paper Media size : Media having a width equal toor larger then that of A2-size paper

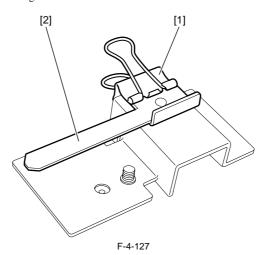
The multi sensor reference plate must be replaced at the same time whenever the carriage or the multi sensor is being replaced.

b) Adjusting the wire roller
To prevent the wire roller mounted on the carriage from contacting the duct and others during carriage operation, perform the following adjusutment whenever tou have removed or replaced the carriage unit. This adjustment is not required when you have replaced only the multi sensor.
\* Make adjustments with the carriage lock released.
\* Make adjustments with the tube disconnected from the tube guide.

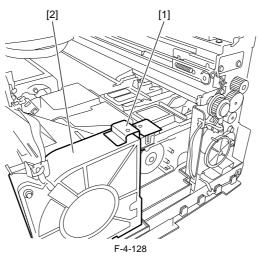
- 1) Remove the ink tube from the wire guide.
- 2) Loosen the two screws[1]
  3) Turn the gear[2] until the lift cam flag[3] reaches the position shown below.
  \* Bottom position where the sensor[4] light is blocked by the flag (lowest position to which the carriage unit descends)



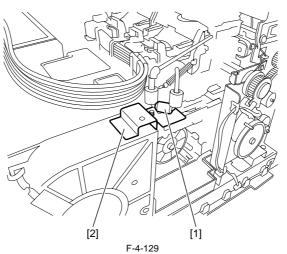
4) Remove clip [1] and roller retainer [2] from the carriage wire tool.



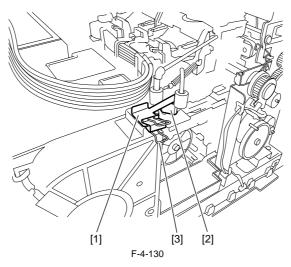
5) Install carriage wire tool [1] in position with its leaf spring being attached to the top of mist fan [2].



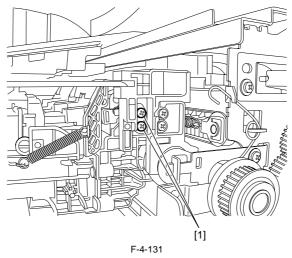
6) Moving the carriage, adjust the height of the wire guide to bring its roller [1] into contact with the top of carriage wire tool [2].



7) Secure roller retainer [1] with clip [3] in contact with the top of roller [2].



8) Retighten two screws [1] loosened in Step 2) to secure the wire guide.



9) Pass the ink tubes through the wire guides.

### 4.5.3 Procedure after Replacing the Head Management Sensor

Since the distance between the head management sensor and the carriage unit varies among printers, the optical axis is factory-adjusted to adjust the nondischarging detection position. When you have replaced the head management sensor or performed assembly/reassembly of surrounding parts that can change the distance between the head management sensor and the carriage unit, reasjustment is required Peform the readjustment in the service mode.

Service mode : SERVICE MODE > ADJUST > NOZZLE CHK POS.

Chapter 5 MAINTENANCE

# Contents

| 5.1 Periodic Replacement Parts   |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 5.1.1 Periodic Replacement Parts |  |
| 5.2 Consumable Parts             |  |
| 5.2.1 Consumable Parts           |  |
| 5.3 Periodic Maintenance         |  |
| 5.3.1 Periodic Maintenance       |  |
|                                  |  |

## **5.1 Periodic Replacement Parts**

## 5.1.1 Periodic Replacement Parts

| T-5-1                |                           |  |  |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| Level                | Periodic Replacement part |  |  |
| User                 | None                      |  |  |
| Service<br>Personnel | None                      |  |  |

T-5-2

## **5.2 Consumable Parts**

### 5.2.1 Consumable Parts

|         | Consumables                         |              |      |                    | Service Mode |           |                     |
|---------|-------------------------------------|--------------|------|--------------------|--------------|-----------|---------------------|
|         | Name                                | Part number  | Q'ty | Life sheets/<br>A1 | PARTS xx     | COUNTER x | States (Error Code) |
| Service | SUCTION FAN UNIT                    | QM3-0701-000 | 1    | 15000              | A1           | А         | OK/W1/E146-4001     |
|         | DUCT UNIT, PLATEN                   | QM3-0801-000 | 1    | 15000              | B1           | В         | OK/W1/E146-4001     |
|         | CARRIAGE UNIT                       | QM3-0804-000 | 1    | 15000              | D1           | D         | OK/W1/W2            |
|         | LEVER, L, INK TUBE                  | QC2-0660-000 | 1    | 15000              |              |           |                     |
|         | LINK, LEVER, TUBE                   | QC2-0661-000 | 2    | 15000              |              |           |                     |
|         | SPRING, TENSION                     | QC2-1396-000 | 1    | 15000              |              |           |                     |
|         | PAD, OIL                            | QC2-0664-000 | 2    | 15000              |              |           |                     |
|         | HOLDER, WIRE(MECH)                  | QC2-0663-000 | 1    | 15000              |              |           |                     |
|         | TUBE GUIDE UNIT                     | QM3-0704-000 | 1    | 15000              |              |           |                     |
|         | CLEANING UNIT, R, RAIL,<br>CARRIAGE | QM3-0543-000 | 1    | 15000              | D1/D3        |           |                     |
|         | CLEANING UNIT, L, RAIL,<br>CARRIAGE | QM3-0542-000 | 1    | 15000              | D1/D3        |           |                     |
|         | FLEXIBLE CABLE ASS'Y                | QM3-0806-000 | 1    | 15000              | D2           |           |                     |
|         | ENCODER SENSOR UNIT                 | QM2-3421-000 | 1    | 15000              | D3           |           |                     |
|         | SCALE, LINEAR                       | QC2-6052-000 | 1    | 15000              |              |           |                     |
|         | CAM, LIFTER                         | QC2-0675-000 | 2    | 15000              | D4           |           |                     |
|         | INK SUPPLY UNIT                     | QM3-0568-040 | 1    | 15000              | F1           | F         | OK/W1/E141-4047     |
|         | PURGE KIT                           | QM3-0653-040 | 1    | 15000              | H1           | Н         | OK/W1/E141-4046     |
|         | SENSOR UNIT                         | QM3-0529-000 | 1    | 15000              | L1           | L         | OK/W1/E194-404A     |
|         | MOTOR, 26.4V, DC                    | QK1-0447-000 | 1    | 15000              | P1           | Р         | OK/W1/W2            |
|         | ROLLER, PICK-UP                     | QM3-0619-000 | 2    | 15000              | Q1           | Q         | OK/W1/W2            |
|         | CAM, ROWEL                          | QC2-1027-000 | 1    | 15000              | R1           | R         | OK/W1/W2            |
|         | MIST FAN UNIT                       | QM3-0799-000 | 1    | 15000              | V1           | V         | OK/W1/E146-4001     |
|         | MIST FILTER UNIT                    | QM3-0212-030 | 1    | 15000              | 1            |           |                     |

- After supplies have been replaced, execute [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS xx] in service mode to initialize (clear) the parts counter information.

## 5.3 Periodic Maintenance

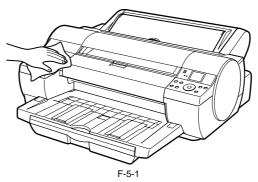
## 5.3.1 Periodic Maintenance

T-5-3

| Level             | Periodic maintenance  |  |  |
|-------------------|---|--|--|
| User              | Cleaning of ink mist and other substances(about once each month |  |  |
| Service personnel | None  |  |  |

a) **Printer cleaning** To keep up with print quality and prevent troubles, clean the printer about once each month.

1) Wipe the external surfaces of the printer with a cloth moistened with water and then wrung tight and then dry them finally with a dry cloth.



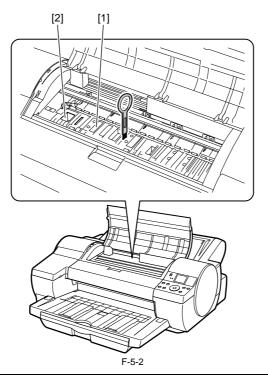
2) Press the [MENU] button to display the main menu.

3) Press the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\blacktriangledown$  buttons to select [Maintenance] and then press the  $\blacktriangleright$  button.

4) Press the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\blacktriangledown$  buttons to select [Platen Cleaning] and press the  $\blacktriangleright$  button.

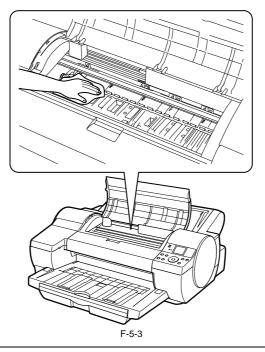
5) Press the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\blacktriangledown$  buttons to select [Yes] and press [OK] button.

6) Open the top cover.
7) If chad has deposited on suction port [1] on the platen or in borderless printing ink receiving channel [2], wipe it off with the cleaner brush.

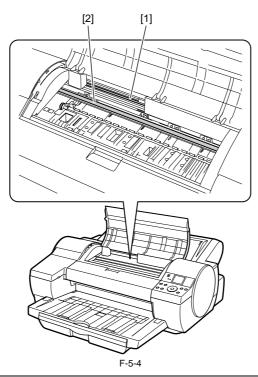


**MEMO:** Rinse the cleaner brush with water when it gets dirty.

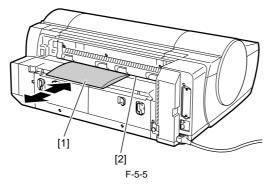
8) Wipe off dirt inside the top cover with a cloth moistened with water and then wrung tight. Wipe off ink smears from the entire surface of the platen, the pinch roller unit, borderless printing ink receiving channel and else.



Do not dry the interiors of the top cover with a dry cloth. Electrostatic charges could make the internal components susceptible to dirt, resulting in degraded print quality.
 Do not use flammable solvents, such as thinner and benzine, on the printer. Solvents coming into contact with any electrical parts inside the printer could result in fires or electrical shock hazards.



9) Remove the roll feed unit and fold plain paper [1] two to three times and then insert through the printer rear into the underside [2] of the pinch roller unit to wipe off dirt on the pinch roller unit.



# Contents

| 6.1 Troubleshooting                            | 6-1  |
|--|------|
| 6.1.1 Outline                                  | 6-1  |
| 6.1.1.1 Outline of Troubleshooting             | 6-1  |
| 6.2 Location of Connectors and Pin Arrangement | 6-1  |
| 6.2.1 Main controller PCB                      |      |
| 6.2.2 Carriage PCB                             | 6-10 |
| 6.2.3 Power supply                             | 6-15 |
| 6.2.4 Roll feed unit PCB                       | 6-15 |
| 6.3 Version Up                                 | 6-17 |
| 6.3.1 Firmware Update Tool                     | 6-17 |
| 6.4 Service Tools.                             | 6-18 |
| 6.4.1 Tool List                                | 6-18 |

# 6.1 Troubleshooting

# 6.1.1 Outline

## 6.1.1.1 Outline of Troubleshooting

1. Outline

Troubles subject to troubleshooting are classified into those shown on the display (warning, error, and service call) and those not shown on the display.

- 2. Precautions for Troubleshooting
  - Check the environmental conditions and the media used for printing.
     Before performing troubleshooting, make sure that all connectors and cables are connected properly.
- 3) When servicing the printer with the external cover removed and the AC power supplied, be extremely careful to avoid electric shock and shorting electrical devices

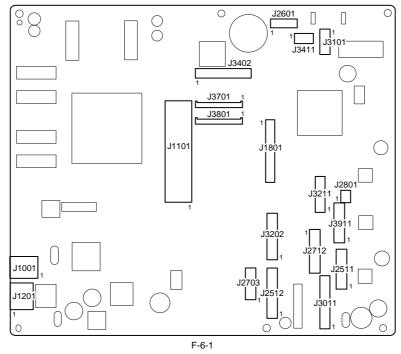
4) In the following sections, the troubleshooting steps are described such that the component related to the most probable cause of the problem will be repaired or replaced first, being followed by components with less problem probability. If multiple components have the same problem probability, the steps are described begging with the easiest one.

After performing each step, check to see if the problem has been resolved by making test prints. If the problem persists, proceed to the next step.

5) After completion of the troubleshooting, check that all connectors and cables have been reconnected and screws have been tightened firmly.6) Whenever you have performed replacement or repair services, make test prints to check whether the problem has been resolved.

# 6.2 Location of Connectors and Pin Arrangement

# 6.2.1 Main controller PCB





| J1001             |             |        |                       |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|-----------------------|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function              |
| 1                 | VBUS        | IN     | USB VBUS (+5V)        |
| 2                 | D-          | IN/OUT | USB data (-)          |
| 3                 | D+          | IN/OUT | USB data (+)          |
| 4                 | GND         | -      | USB GND               |
| 5                 | GND         | -      | GND (Connector shell) |
| 6                 | GND         | -      | GND (Connector shell) |

| J1001             |             |        |                      |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|----------------------|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function             |
| 1                 | GND         | -      | GND                  |
| 2                 | GND         | -      | GND                  |
| 3                 | GND         | -      | GND                  |
| 4                 | +3.3V       | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V) |
| 5                 | +3.3V       | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V) |
| 6                 | +3.3V       | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V) |

| J1001      |               |                  |  |
|------------|---------------|------------------|--|
| Pin        | Signal name   | IN/OUT           | Function   |
| Numbe<br>r |               |                  |  |
| 7          | +3.3V         | OUT              | Power supply (+3.3V)   |
| 8          | +3.3V         | OUT              | Power supply (+3.3V)   |
| 9          | +3.3V         | OUT              | Power supply (+3.3V)   |
| 10         | N.C.          | -                | N.C.   |
| 11         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 12         | PME#          | IN               | Power management enable signal                                     |
| 13         | INTA#         | IN               | interrupt signal   |
| 14<br>15   | GND<br>RST#   | -<br>OUT         | GND<br>PCI west sized  |
| 15         | CLK           | OUT              | PCI reset signal PCI clock signal                                  |
| 10         | GNT#          | OUT              | Grant signal   |
| 18         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 19         | REQ#          | IN               | Request signal   |
| 20         | AD31          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 31   |
| 21         | AD30          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 30   |
| 22         | AD29          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 29   |
| 23         | AD28          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 28   |
| 24         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 25         | AD27          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 27   |
| 26         | AD26          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 26   |
| 27         | AD25          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 25   |
| 28<br>29   | AD24<br>CBE3# | IN/OUT<br>IN/OUT | Address and data signal 24<br>Bus command and byte enable signal 3 |
| 30         | IDSEL         | OUT              | Initialization device select signal                                |
| 31         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 32         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 33         | AD23          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 23   |
| 34         | AD22          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 22   |
| 35         | AD21          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 21   |
| 36         | AD20          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 20   |
| 37         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 38         | AD19          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 19   |
| 39         | AD18          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 18   |
| 40         | AD17          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 17   |
| 41<br>42   | AD16          | IN/OUT<br>OUT    | Address and data signal 16   |
| 42         | CBE2#<br>GND  | 001              | Bus command and byte enable signal 2 GND                           |
| 43         | FRAME#        | -<br>IN/OUT      | Cycle frame signal   |
| 45         | IRDY#         | IN/OUT           | Initiator redy signal  |
| 46         | TRDY#         | IN/OUT           | Target redy signal   |
| 47         | DEVSEL#       | IN/OUT           | Device select signal   |
| 48         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 49         | STOP#         | IN/OUT           | Stop signal  |
| 50         | LOCK#         | IN/OUT           | Lock signal  |
| 51         | PERP#         | IN/OUT           | Parity error signal  |
| 52         | SERR#         | IN/OUT           | System error signal  |
| 53         | PAR           | IN/OUT           | Parity signal  |
| 54         | CBE1#         | IN/OUT           | Bus command and byte enable signal 1                               |
| 55         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 56<br>57   | GND<br>AD15   | -<br>IN/OUT      | GND Address and data signal 15                                     |
| 57<br>58   | AD15<br>AD14  | IN/OUT<br>IN/OUT | Address and data signal 15<br>Address and data signal 14           |
| 59         | AD14<br>AD13  | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 14<br>Address and data signal 13           |
| 60         | AD12          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 12   |
| 61         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 62         | AD11          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 11   |
| 63         | AD10          | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 10   |
| 64         | AD9           | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 09   |
| 65         | AD8           | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 08   |
| 66         | CBE0#         | IN/OUT           | Bus command and byte enable signal 0                               |
| 67         | GND           | -                | GND  |
| 68         | AD7           | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 07   |
| 69<br>70   | AD6           | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 06   |
| 70         | AD5           | IN/OUT           | Address and data signal 05   |

=

| J1001             | 11001       |        |                            |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|----------------------------|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                   |  |
| 71                | AD4         | IN/OUT | Address and data signal 04 |  |
| 72                | GND         | -      | GND                        |  |
| 73                | AD3         | IN/OUT | Address and data signal 03 |  |
| 74                | AD2         | IN/OUT | Address and data signal 02 |  |
| 75                | AD1         | IN/OUT | Address and data signal 01 |  |
| 76                | AD0         | IN/OUT | Address and data signal 00 |  |
| 77                | GND         | -      | GND                        |  |
| 78                | HDD_LED     | -      | N.C.                       |  |
| 79                | +5V         | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)         |  |
| 80                | +5V         | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)         |  |
| 81                | +5V         | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)         |  |
| 82                | +3.3V       | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)       |  |
| 83                | +3.3V       | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)       |  |
| 84                | +3.3V       | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)       |  |
| 85                | GND         | -      | GND                        |  |
| 86                | GND         | -      | GND                        |  |
| 87                | GND         | -      | GND                        |  |
| 88                | GND         | -      | GND                        |  |

# T-6-3

| J1201             |              |        |   |
|-------------------|--------------|--------|---|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name  | IN/OUT | Function                                  |
| 1                 | TX+          | OUT    | Ethernet data TX line (+)                 |
| 2                 | TX-          | OUT    | Ethernet data TX line (-)                 |
| 3                 | RX+          | IN     | Ethernet data RX line (+)                 |
| 4                 | -            | -      | Not used                                  |
| 5                 | -            | -      | Not used                                  |
| 6                 | RX-          | IN     | Ethernet data RX line (-)                 |
| 7                 | -            | -      | Not used                                  |
| 8                 | -            | -      | Not used                                  |
| 9                 | GREEN_LED_C  | OUT    | Link LED (green:100Mb/s) cathode terminal |
| 10                | GREEN_LED_A  | OUT    | Link LED (green:100Mb/s) anode terminal   |
| 11                | YELLOW_LED_C | OUT    | Link LED (yellow:10Mb/s) cathode terminal |
| 12                | YELLOW_LED_A | OUT    | Link LED (yellow:10Mb/s) anode terminal   |

# T-6-4

| J1801             | J1801       |        |                                   |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                          |  |  |
| 1                 | HD1_VHFB+   | OUT    | VH feedback voltage +             |  |  |
| 2                 | HD1_VHFB-   | OUT    | VH feedback voltage -             |  |  |
| 3                 | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)             |  |  |
| 4                 | GND         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 5                 | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)             |  |  |
| 6                 | GND         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 7                 | RGV20(VCC)  | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)             |  |  |
| 8                 | GND         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 9                 | VM          | IN     | Power supply (+26V)               |  |  |
| 10                | GND         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 11                | VM2         | IN     | Power supply (+26V)               |  |  |
| 12                | GND         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 13                | VH_ENB      | OUT    | VH power supply ON/OFF signal     |  |  |
| 14                | PW_CONT     | OUT    | Normal/power saving switch signal |  |  |

| J2511 |             |        |                      |
|-------|-------------|--------|----------------------|
|       | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function             |
| Numbe |             |        |                      |
| r     |             |        |                      |
| 1     | +3V         | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V) |
| 2     | GND         | -      | GND                  |

| J2511             | 12511             |        |                                      |  |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name       | IN/OUT | Function                             |  |
| 3                 | CUTTER_R_SNS_R    | IN     | Cutter right detection sensor signal |  |
| 4                 | CUTTER_OUTA       | OUT    | Cutter motor driver signal A         |  |
| 5                 | CUTTER_OUTB       | OUT    | Cutter motor driver signal B         |  |
| 6                 | +3V               | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                 |  |
| 7                 | GND               | -      | GND                                  |  |
| 8                 | HAKUSHA_CAM_SNS_R | IN     | Spur cam sensor output signal        |  |
| 9                 | HAKUSHA_MOTOR_AM  | OUT    | Spur motor drive signal AM           |  |
| 10                | HAKUSHA_MOTOR_AP  | OUT    | Spur motor drive signal AP           |  |
| 11                | FAN_VM            | OUT    | Power supply (+26V)                  |  |
| 12                | MIST_FAN_LOCK     | IN     | Mist fan lock signal                 |  |
| 13                | MIST_FAN_PWM      | OUT    | Mist fan duty control signal         |  |
| 14                | GND               | -      | GND                                  |  |

\_

T-6-6

| J2512             | 2512               |        |  |  |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name        | IN/OUT | Function   |  |
| 1                 | FAN_VM             | OUT    | Power supply (+26V)                              |  |
| 2                 | PLATEN_FAN_LOCK    | IN     | suction fan lock signal                          |  |
| 3                 | PLATEN_FAN_PWM     | OUT    | suction fan duty control signal                  |  |
| 4                 | GND                | -      | GND  |  |
| 5                 | MENT_SDA           | IN/OUT | Maintenance cartridge rom control signal (data)  |  |
| 6                 | MENT_SCL           | IN/OUT | Maintenance cartridge rom control signal (clock) |  |
| 7                 | GND                | -      | GND  |  |
| 8                 | MENT_3V            |        | Power supply (+3.3V)                             |  |
| 9                 | SNS_3V             | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                             |  |
| 10                | GND                | -      | GND  |  |
| 11                | CST_PAPER_NONE_SNS | IN     | Cassette paper detection sensor output signal    |  |
| 12                | SNS_3V             | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                             |  |
| 13                | GND                | -      | GND  |  |
| 14                | PE_SNS             | IN     | Paper ditection sensor output signal             |  |
| 15                | SNS_3V             | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                             |  |
| 16                | GND                | -      | GND  |  |
| 17                | LIFT_CAM_SNS       | IN     | Lift cam sensor output signal                    |  |

# T-6-7

| J2601             | 2601         |        |                                 |  |
|-------------------|--------------|--------|---------------------------------|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name  | IN/OUT | Function                        |  |
| 1                 | POWER_ON     | IN     | Power switch signal             |  |
| 2                 | PM_START     | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)              |  |
| 3                 | BUZZER       | OUT    | Buzzer control signal           |  |
| 4                 | PDODATA      | OUT    | Panel IC control signal         |  |
| 5                 | +3.3V        | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)            |  |
| 6                 | PDI_DATA     | IN     | Panel IC data signal            |  |
| 7                 | GND          | -      | GND                             |  |
| 8                 | /PANEL RESET | OUT    | Panel reset signal              |  |
| 9                 | GND          | -      | GND                             |  |
| 10                | PDOPCLK      | OUT    | Panel IC clock signal           |  |
| 11                | PANEL_5V     | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)              |  |
| 12                | /PDOCS_L     | OUT    | Panel supply chip select signal |  |

| J2703        |                |        |                            |
|--------------|----------------|--------|----------------------------|
| Pin<br>Numbe | Signal name    | IN/OUT | Function                   |
| r            |                |        |                            |
| 1            | OPT_5V         | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)         |
| 2            | GND            | -      | GND                        |
| 3            | ROLL_CAM_SNS   | IN     | Roll cam sensor signal     |
| 4            | ROLL_PAPER_SNS | IN     | Roll media sensor signal   |
| 5            | ROLL_UNIT      | IN     | Roll unit detection signal |

| J2703             | 12703       |        |                                 |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                        |  |  |
| 6                 | VM2         | OUT    | Power supply (+26V)             |  |  |
| 7                 | VM2         | OUT    | Power supply (+26V)             |  |  |
| 8                 | /ROLL_SLEEP | OUT    | Roll motor driver sleep signal  |  |  |
| 9                 | ROLL_STB    | OUT    | Roll motor driver strobe signal |  |  |
| 10                | ROLL_DAT    | OUT    | Roll motor driver data signal   |  |  |
| 11                | ROLL_CLK    | OUT    | Roll motor driver clock signal  |  |  |
| 12                | GND         | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 13                | GND         | -      | GND                             |  |  |

-

| J2712 |               |        |   |
|-------|---------------|--------|---|
| Pin   | Signal name   | IN/OUT | Function                                |
| Numbe |               |        |   |
| r     |               |        |   |
| 1     | CST_OUTB      | OUT    | Cassette motor drive signal B           |
| 2     | CST_OUTA      | OUT    | Cassette motor drive signal A           |
| 3     | GND           | -      | GND                                     |
| 4     | CST_ENCA      | IN     | Cassette encoder output signal A        |
| 5     | SNS_5V        | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)                      |
| 6     | CST_ENCB      | IN     | Cassette encoder output signal B        |
| 7     | SNS_3V        | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                    |
| 8     | GND           | -      | GND                                     |
| 9     | CST_CAM_SNS   |        | Cassette cam sensor output signal       |
| 10    | SNS_3V        | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                    |
| 11    | GND           | -      | GND                                     |
| 12    | CST_EARLY_SNS | IN     | Cassette pick-up sensor output signal   |
| 13    | SNS_3V        | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                    |
| 14    | GND           | -      | GND                                     |
| 15    | CST_UNIT_SNS  | IN     | Cassette detection sensor output signal |
|       |               |        |   |

# T-6-10

| J2801 |             |        |                           |
|-------|-------------|--------|---------------------------|
| Pin   | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                  |
| Numbe |             |        |                           |
| r     |             |        |                           |
| 1     | LF_OUTB     | OUT    | Feed motor drive signal B |
| 2     | LF_OUTA     | OUT    | Feed motor drive signal A |

| J3011 | 3011         |        |   |  |  |
|-------|--------------|--------|---|--|--|
| Pin   | Signal name  | IN/OUT | Function  |  |  |
| Numbe |              |        |   |  |  |
| r     |              |        |   |  |  |
| 1     | LIFT_OUTCOM  | OUT    | Lift motor Power supply                           |  |  |
| 2     | LIFT_OUTAP   | OUT    | Lift motor drive signal AP                        |  |  |
| 3     | LIFT_OUTAM   | OUT    | Lift motor drive signal AM                        |  |  |
| 4     | LIFT_OUTBP   | OUT    | Lift motor drive signal BP                        |  |  |
| 5     | LIFT_OUTBM   | OUT    | Lift motor drive signal BM                        |  |  |
| 6     | GND          | -      | GND   |  |  |
| 7     | FUTO_CLMP    | OUT    | Head management sensor unit clamp signal          |  |  |
| 8     | FUTO_XLEDON  | OUT    | Head management sensor unit LED ON/OFF signal     |  |  |
| 9     | SNS_5V       |        | Power supply (+5V)                                |  |  |
| 10    | FUTO_XCMP0   | IN     | Head management sensor unit skew detection signal |  |  |
| 11    | PUMP_OUTB    | OUT    | Pump motor drive signal B                         |  |  |
| 12    | PUMP_OUTA    | OUT    | Pump motor drive signal A                         |  |  |
| 13    | GND          | -      | GND   |  |  |
| 14    | PUMP_ENCA    | IN     | Pump encoder output signal A                      |  |  |
| 15    | SNS_5V       |        | Power supply (+5V)                                |  |  |
| 16    | PUMP_ENCB    | IN     | Pump encoder output signal B                      |  |  |
| 17    | PUMP_CAM_3V  | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                              |  |  |
| 18    | GND          | -      | GND   |  |  |
| 19    | PUMP_CAM_SNS | IN     | Pump cam sensor output signal                     |  |  |

\_

| J3101             | 3101        |        |   |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|---|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                                    |  |  |
| 1                 | CR_HWP      | IN     | Carriage motor hole device W-phase + signal |  |  |
| 2                 | CR_HWM      | IN     | Carriage motor hole device W-phase - signal |  |  |
| 3                 | CR_W        | OUT    | Carriage motor W-phase drive signal         |  |  |
| 4                 | CR_HVM      | IN     | Carriage motor hole device V-phase - signal |  |  |
| 5                 | CR_U        | OUT    | Carriage motor U-phase drive signal         |  |  |
| 6                 | GND         | -      | GND   |  |  |
| 7                 | CR_V        | OUT    | Carriage motor V-phase drive signal         |  |  |
| 8                 | SNS_5V      |        | Power supply (+5V)                          |  |  |
| 9                 | N.C.        | -      | N.C   |  |  |
| 10                | CR_HVP      | IN     | Carriage motor hole device V-phase + signal |  |  |
| 11                | CR_HUM      | IN     | Carriage motor hole device U-phase - signal |  |  |
| 12                | CR_HUP      | IN     | Carriage motor hole device U-phase + signal |  |  |

# T-6-13

| J3202             | 3202        |        |                                      |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                             |  |  |
| 1                 | TANK_DAT0   | IN/OUT | Ink tank data signal 0               |  |  |
| 2                 | TANK_DAT1   | IN/OUT | Ink tank data signal 1               |  |  |
| 3                 | TANK_3V     | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                 |  |  |
| 4                 | TANK_DAT2   | IN/OUT | Ink tank data signal 2               |  |  |
| 5                 | GND         | -      | GND                                  |  |  |
| 6                 | TANK_CLK    | OUT    | Ink tank clock signal                |  |  |
| 7                 | TANK_DAT3   | IN/OUT | Ink tank data signal 3               |  |  |
| 8                 | TANK_DAT4   | IN/OUT | Ink tank data signal 4               |  |  |
| 9                 | TANK_3V     | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                 |  |  |
| 10                | TANK_DAT5   | IN/OUT | Ink tank data signal 5               |  |  |
| 11                | GND         | -      | GND                                  |  |  |
| 12                | TANK_CLK    | OUT    | Ink tank clock signal                |  |  |
| 13                | GND         | -      | GND                                  |  |  |
| 14                | INK_SNS0    | IN     | Ink detection sensor output signal 0 |  |  |
| 15                | INK_SNS1    | IN     | Ink detection sensor output signal 1 |  |  |
| 16                | INK_SNS2    | IN     | Ink detection sensor output signal 2 |  |  |
| 17                | GND         | -      | GND                                  |  |  |
| 18                | INK_SNS3    | IN     | Ink detection sensor output signal 3 |  |  |
| 19                | INK_SNS4    | IN     | Ink detection sensor output signal 4 |  |  |
| 20                | INK_SNS5    | IN     | Ink detection sensor output signal 5 |  |  |

| J3211             |                  |        |  |
|-------------------|------------------|--------|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name      | IN/OUT | Function   |
| 1                 | SNS_3V           | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                             |
| 2                 | GND              | -      | GND  |
| 3                 | VALVE_DETECT_SNS | IN     | Valve open/closed detection sensor output signal |
| 4                 | VALVE_MOTOR_AM   | OUT    | Valve motor drive signal AM                      |
| 5                 | VALVE_MOTOR_AP   | OUT    | Valve motor drive signal AP                      |
| 6                 | LF_HP_SNS_3V     | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                             |
| 7                 | GND              | -      | GND  |
| 8                 | LF_HP_SNS        | IN     | Feed roller HP sensor output signal              |
| 9                 | GND              | -      | GND  |
| 10                | LF_ENCA          | IN     | Feed roller encoder output signal A              |
| 11                | RGV5             | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)                               |
| 12                | LF_ENCB          | IN     | Feed roller encoder output signal B              |

| J3402             | 3402        |        |                        |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function               |  |  |
| 1                 | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 2                 | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 3                 | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 4                 | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 5                 | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 6                 | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 7                 | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 8                 | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 9                 | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 10                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 11                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 12                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 13                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 14                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 15                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 16                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 17                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 18                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 19                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 20                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 21                | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 22                | HD1_VHFBH   | IN     | VH feed back voltage + |  |  |
| 23                | HD1_VHFBG   | IN     | VH feed back voltage - |  |  |
| 24                | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 25                | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 26                | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 27                | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 28                | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 29                | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |
| 30                | GND         | -      | GND                    |  |  |

# T-6-16

| J3411             | J3411       |        |                               |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|-------------------------------|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                      |  |
| 1                 | TH2_OUT     | IN     | Thermistor output signal      |  |
| 2                 | GND         | -      | GND                           |  |
| 3                 | RHV_OUT     | IN     | Humidity sensor output signal |  |
| 4                 | SNS_5V      |        | Power supply (+5V)            |  |

| J3701             | 3701            |        |                                |  |  |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name     | IN/OUT | Function                       |  |  |
| 1                 | H1-D-DATA-7-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 7(D)    |  |  |
| 2                 | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 3                 | H1-E-HE-8       | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal8(E)  |  |  |
| 4                 | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 5                 | H1-E-DATA-8-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 8(E)    |  |  |
| 6                 | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 7                 | H1-F-DATA-10-OD | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 10(F)   |  |  |
| 8                 | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 9                 | H1-E-DATA-9-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 9(E)    |  |  |
| 10                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 11                | H1-F-HE-10      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal10(F) |  |  |
| 12                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 13                | H1-F-DATA-11-OD | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 11(F)   |  |  |
| 14                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 15                | H1-F-HE-11      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal11(F) |  |  |
| 16                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |

| J3701             | 3701            |        |                                     |  |  |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name     | IN/OUT | Function                            |  |  |
| 17                | H1-F-DATA-11-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal11(F)        |  |  |
| 18                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 19                | H1-F-DATA-10-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal10(F)        |  |  |
| 20                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 21                | H1-E-HE-9       | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal9(E)       |  |  |
| 22                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 23                | H1-E-DATA-9-EV  | OUT    | Even head L data signal9(E)         |  |  |
| 24                | H1-DLD LICC2    | OUT    | Head L analogue switch latch signal |  |  |
| 25                | H1-DATA LICC2   | OUT    | Head L analogue switch data signal  |  |  |
| 26                | H1-DASLK LICC2  | OUT    | Head L analogue switch clock signal |  |  |
| 27                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 28                | H1-DSOUT2       | IN     | Head L temperature output 2         |  |  |
| 29                | H1-DSOUT1       | IN     | Head L temperature output 1         |  |  |
| 30                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 31                | PWLED4_ON       | OUT    | Multi sensor LED 4 drive signal     |  |  |
| 32                | PWLED3_ON       | OUT    | Multi sensor LED 3 drive signal     |  |  |
| 33                | PWLED2_ON       | OUT    | Multi sensor LED 2 drive signal     |  |  |
| 34                | PWLED1_ON       | OUT    | Multi sensor LED 1 drive signal     |  |  |
| 35                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 36                | MLT_SNS_1IN     | IN     | Multi sensor signal 1               |  |  |
| 37                | MLT_SNS_2IN     | IN     | Multi sensor signal 2               |  |  |
| 38                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 39                | H1-B-DATA-2-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 2(B)         |  |  |
| 40                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 41                | H1-B-DATA-3-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 3(B)         |  |  |
| 42                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 43                | H1-C-HE-4       | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal8(E)       |  |  |
| 44                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 45                | H1-C-DATA-4-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 4(C)         |  |  |
| 46                | SNS_5V          | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)                  |  |  |
| 47                | ENCODER_B       | IN     | Carriage encoder output signalB     |  |  |
| 48                | SNS_5V          | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)                  |  |  |
| 49                | ENCODER_A       | IN     | Carriage encoder output signalA     |  |  |
| 50                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |

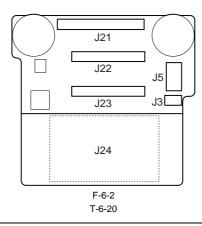
=

| J3801             | 3801           |        |                                 |  |  |
|-------------------|----------------|--------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name    | IN/OUT | Function                        |  |  |
| 1                 | H1-E-DATA-8-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 8(E)    |  |  |
| 2                 | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 3                 | H1-D-HE-7      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 7(D)  |  |  |
| 4                 | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 5                 | IO-ASIC_SDA    | IN/OUT | Head ROM control signal (data)  |  |  |
| 6                 | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 7                 | H1-D-DATA-7-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 7(D)    |  |  |
| 8                 | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 9                 | H1-D-DATA-6-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 6(D)    |  |  |
| 10                | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 11                | H1-D-DATA-6-OD | OUT    | Odd head L data signal6(D)      |  |  |
| 12                | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 13                | IO-ASIC_SCL    | IN/OUT | Head ROM control signal (clock) |  |  |
| 14                | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 15                | H1-D-HE-6      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 6(D)  |  |  |
| 16                | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 17                | H1-C-HE-5      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 5(C)  |  |  |
| 18                | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 19                | H1-C-DATA-5-OD | OUT    | Odd head L data signal5(C)      |  |  |
| 20                | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 21                | H1_CLK         | OUT    | Head L clock signal             |  |  |
| 22                | GND            | -      | GND                             |  |  |
| 23                | HEAD_3V        | OUT    | Power supply (+3V)              |  |  |
| 24                | HEAD_3V        | OUT    | Power supply (+3V)              |  |  |

| J3801             | 3801           |        |                                |  |  |
|-------------------|----------------|--------|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name    | IN/OUT | Function                       |  |  |
| 25                | H1_LT          | OUT    | Head L latch signal            |  |  |
| 26                | H-DASH_LICC2_B | OUT    | Analogue switch/AD triggar     |  |  |
| 27                | H1-C-DATA-5-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 5(C)   |  |  |
| 28                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 29                | H1-B-HE-3      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 3(B) |  |  |
| 30                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 31                | H1-C-DATA-4-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 4(C)   |  |  |
| 32                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 33                | H1-B-DATA-3-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 3(B)   |  |  |
| 34                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 35                | H1-B-DATA-2-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 2(B)   |  |  |
| 36                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 37                | H1-A-DATA-1-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 1(A)   |  |  |
| 38                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 39                | H1-A-HE-1      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 1(A) |  |  |
| 40                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 41                | H1-A-DATA-0-EV | OUT    | Even head L data signal 0(A)   |  |  |
| 42                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 43                | H1-A-HE-0      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 0(A) |  |  |
| 44                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 45                | H1-A-DATA-0-OD | OUT    | Odd head L data signal0(A)     |  |  |
| 46                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 47                | H1-A-DATA-1-OD | OUT    | Odd head L data signal1(A)     |  |  |
| 48                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 49                | H1-B-HE-2      | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 2(B) |  |  |
| 50                | GND            | -      | GND                            |  |  |

| J3911             | 3911            |        |                                     |  |  |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name     | IN/OUT | Function                            |  |  |
| 1                 | TANK_COVER_SW   | IN     | Ink tank cover switch output signal |  |  |
| 2                 | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 3                 | SNS_3V          | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                |  |  |
| 4                 | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 5                 | TOP_COVER_SNS   | IN     | Top cover sensor output signal      |  |  |
| 6                 | SNS_3V          | OUT    | Power supply (+3.3V)                |  |  |
| 7                 | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 8                 | CUTTER_L_SNS    | IN     | Cutter HP sensor signal             |  |  |
| 9                 | SNS_5V          |        | Power supply (+5V)                  |  |  |
| 10                | GND             | -      | GND                                 |  |  |
| 11                | CUTTER_POS1_SNS | IN     | Cutter lift sensor output signal    |  |  |
| 12                | CUTTER_OUT_SC-  | OUT    | Cutter lift motor drive signal SC-  |  |  |
| 13                | CUTTER_OUT_SC+  | OUT    | Cutter lift motor drive signal SC+  |  |  |

# 6.2.2 Carriage PCB



| J3                |           |        |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------|--------|-----------------------------------|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r |           | IN/OUT | Function                          |
| 1                 | ENCODER_B | IN     | Linear encoder detection signal B |
| 2                 | GND       | -      | GND                               |
| 3                 | ENCODER_A | IN     | Linear encoder detection signal A |
| 4                 | H1_5V     | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)                |

| - | 6- | -2 | 1 |
|---|----|----|---|
|   |    |    |   |

| J5                |             |        |                                |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                       |
| 1                 | 3.3V        | OUT    | Power supply (+3V)             |
| 2                 | SCL         | OUT    | EEPROM control signal (clock)  |
| 3                 | SDA         | IN/OUT | EEPROM control signal (data)   |
| 4                 | GND         | -      | GND                            |
| 5                 | PWLED1      | OUT    | Multi sensor LED1 drive signal |
| 6                 | PWLED2      | OUT    | Multi sensor LED2 drive signal |
| 7                 | PWLED3      | OUT    | Multi sensor LED3 drive signal |
| 8                 | PWLED4      | OUT    | Multi sensor LED4 drive signal |
| 9                 | VH          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)          |
| 10                | OUT1        | IN     | Multi sensor input signal 1    |
| 11                | OUT2        | IN     | Multi sensor input signal 2    |
| 12                | H1-5V       | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)             |

| J21   |             |        |                        |
|-------|-------------|--------|------------------------|
|       | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function               |
| Numbe |             |        |                        |
| r     |             |        |                        |
| 1     | GND         | -      | GND                    |
| 2     | GND         | -      | GND                    |
| 3     | GND         | -      | GND                    |
| 4     | GND         | -      | GND                    |
| 5     | GND         | -      | GND                    |
| 6     | GND         | -      | GND                    |
| 7     | GND         | -      | GND                    |
| 8     | HD1_VHFBG   | OUT    | VH feed back voltage - |
| 9     | HD1_VHFBH   | OUT    | VH feed back voltage + |
| 10    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 11    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 12    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 13    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 14    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 15    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 16    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 17    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |
| 18    | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V)  |

| J21               |             |        |                       |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|-----------------------|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function              |
| 19                | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V) |
| 20                | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V) |
| 21                | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V) |
| 22                | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V) |
| 23                | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V) |
| 24                | VH          | IN     | Power supply (+21.5V) |
| 25                | GND         | -      | GND                   |
| 26                | GND         | -      | GND                   |
| 27                | GND         | -      | GND                   |
| 28                | GND         | -      | GND                   |
| 29                | GND         | -      | GND                   |
| 30                | GND         | -      | GND                   |

| J22<br>Pin        | Signal nome     | INTOTAL | Function                            |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name     | IN/OUT  | Function                            |
| 1                 | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 2                 | ENCODER_A       | OUT     | Linear encoder output signalA       |
| 3                 | SNS_5V          | IN      | Power supply (+5V)                  |
| 4                 | ENCODER_B       | OUT     | Linear encoder output signalB       |
| 5                 | SNS_5V          | IN      | Power supply (+5V)                  |
| 6                 | H1-C-DATA-4-OD  | IN      | Odd head L data signal 4(C)         |
| 7                 | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 8                 | H1-C-HE-4       | IN      | Head L heat enable signal8(E)       |
| 9                 | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 10                | H1-B-DATA-3-OD  | IN      | Odd head L data signal 3(B)         |
| 11                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 12                | H1-B-DATA-2-OD  | IN      | Odd head L data signal 2(B)         |
| 13                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 14                | MLT_SNS_2IN     | OUT     | Multi sensor signal2                |
| 15                | MLT_SNS_1IN     | OUT     | Multi sensor signal1                |
| 16                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 17                | PWLED1_ON       | IN      | Multi sensor LED 1 drive signal     |
| 18                | PWLED2_ON       | IN      | Multi sensor LED 2 drive signal     |
| 19                | PWLED3_ON       | IN      | Multi sensor LED 3 drive signal     |
| 20                | PWLED4_ON       | IN      | Multi sensor LED 4 drive signal     |
| 21                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 22                | H1-DSOUT1       | OUT     | Head L temperature output 1         |
| 23                | H1-DSOUT2       | OUT     | Head L temperature output 2         |
| 24                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 25                | H1-DASLK LICC2  | IN      | Head L analogue switch clock signal |
| 26                | H1-DATA LICC2   | IN      | Head L analogue switch data signal  |
| 27                | H1-DLD LICC2    | IN      | Head L analogue switch latch signal |
| 28                | H1-E-DATA-9-EV  | IN      | Even head L data signal9(E)         |
| 29                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 30                | H1-E-HE-9       | IN      | Head L heat enable signal9(E)       |
| 31                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 32                | H1-F-DATA-10-EV | IN      | Even head L data signal10(F)        |
| 33                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 34                | H1-F-DATA-11-EV | IN      | Even head L data signal11(F)        |
| 35                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 36                | H1-F-HE-11      | IN      | Head L heat enable signal11(F)      |
| 37                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 38                | H1-F-DATA-11-OD | IN      | Odd head L data signal 11(F)        |
| 39                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 40                | H1-F-HE-10      | IN      | Head L heat enable signal10(F)      |
| 41                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 42                | H1-E-DATA-9-OD  | IN      | Odd head L data signal 9(E)         |
| 43                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 44                | H1-F-DATA-10-OD | IN      | Odd head L data signal 10(F)        |
| 45                | GND             | -       | GND                                 |
| 46                | H1-E-DATA-8-OD  | IN      | Odd head L data signal 8(E)         |

| J22   | 22             |                             |                               |  |  |
|-------|----------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|--|--|
|       | Signal name    | Signal name IN/OUT Function |                               |  |  |
| Numbe |                |                             |                               |  |  |
| r     |                |                             |                               |  |  |
| 47    | GND            | -                           | GND                           |  |  |
| 48    | H1-E-HE-8      | IN                          | Head L heat enable signal8(E) |  |  |
| 49    | GND            | -                           | GND                           |  |  |
| 50    | H1-D-DATA-7-OD | IN                          | Odd head L data signal 7(D)   |  |  |

\_

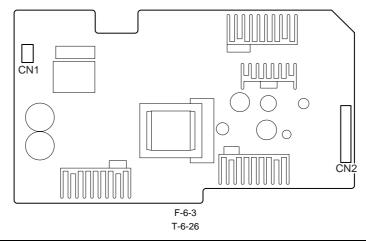
| J23   |                |        |                                 |
|-------|----------------|--------|---------------------------------|
| Pin   | Signal name    | IN/OUT | Function                        |
| Numbe | ···            |        |                                 |
| r     |                |        |                                 |
| 1     | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 2     | H1-B-HE-2      | IN     | Head L heat enable signal 2(B)  |
| 3     | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 4     | H1-A-DATA-1-OD | IN     | Odd head L data signal 1(A)     |
| 5     | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 6     | H1-A-DATA-0-OD | IN     | Odd head L data signal 0(A)     |
| 7     | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 8     | H1-A-HE-0      | IN     | Head L heat enable signal 0(A)  |
| 9     | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 10    | H1-A-DATA-0-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 0(A)    |
| 11    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 12    | H1-A-HE-1      | IN     | Head L heat enable signal 1(A)  |
| 13    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 14    | H1-A-DATA-1-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 1(A)    |
| 15    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 16    | H1-B-DATA-2-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 2(B)    |
| 17    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 18    | H1-B-DATA-3-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 3(B)    |
| 19    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 20    | H1-C-DATA-4-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 4(C)    |
| 21    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 22    | H1-B-HE-3      | IN     | Head L heat enable signal 3(B)  |
| 23    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 24    | H1-C-DATA-5-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 5(C)    |
| 25    | H-DASH_LICC2_B | IN     | Analogue switch/AD triggar      |
| 26    | H1_LT          | IN     | Head L latch signal             |
| 27    | HEAD_3V        | IN     | Power supply (+3V)              |
| 28    | HEAD_3V        | IN     | Power supply (+3V)              |
| 29    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 30    | H1_CLK         | IN     | Head L clock signal             |
| 31    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 32    | H1-C-DATA-5-OD | IN     | Odd head L data signal 5(C)     |
| 33    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 34    | H1-C-HE-5      | IN     | Head L heat enable signal 5(C)  |
| 35    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 36    | H1-D-HE-6      | IN     | Head L heat enable signal 6(D)  |
| 37    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 38    | IO-ASIC_SCL    | IN/OUT | Head ROM control signal (clock) |
| 39    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 40    | H1-D-DATA-6-OD | IN     | Odd head L data signal 6(D)     |
| 41    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 42    | H1-D-DATA-6-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 6(D)    |
| 43    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 44    | H1-D-DATA-7-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 7(D)    |
| 45    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 46    | IO-ASIC_SDA    | IN/OUT | Head ROM control signal (data)  |
| 47    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 48    | H1-D-HE-7      | IN     | Head L heat enable signal 7(D)  |
| 49    | GND            | -      | GND                             |
| 50    | H1-E-DATA-8-EV | IN     | Even head L data signal 8(E)    |

| J24        | 24                               |            |  |  |  |
|------------|----------------------------------|------------|--|--|--|
| Pin        | Signal name                      | IN/OUT     | Function   |  |  |
| Numbe<br>r |                                  |            |  |  |  |
| 1          | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 2          | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 3          | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 4          | VHT2                             | OUT        | Head L transistor drive power supply                         |  |  |
| 5          | H1-F-DATA-10-EV                  | OUT        | Even head L data signal10(F)                                 |  |  |
| 6          | EEPROM_SDA                       | IN/OUT     | EEPROM control signal (data)                                 |  |  |
| 7          | EEPROM_SCL                       | OUT        | EEPROM control signal (clock)                                |  |  |
| 8          | HEAD_3V                          | OUT        | Power supply (+3V)   |  |  |
| 9          | H1-C-DIA1                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 1(C)                                 |  |  |
| 10         | H1-A-HE-1                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal 1(A)                               |  |  |
| 11         | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 12         | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 13         | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 14         | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 15         | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 16         | H1-E-DATA-9-OD                   | OUT        | Odd head L data signal 9(E)                                  |  |  |
| 17         | H1-F-HE-11                       | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal11(F)                               |  |  |
| 18         | H1-E-DIA1                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 1(E)                                 |  |  |
| 19         | H1-D-DIA1                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 1(D)                                 |  |  |
| 20         | HEAD_3V                          | OUT        | Power supply (+3V)   |  |  |
| 21         | HEAD_3V                          | OUT        | Power supply (+3V)   |  |  |
| 22         | H1-B-DATA-3-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 3(B)                                 |  |  |
| 23         | H1-A-DATA-0-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 0(A)                                 |  |  |
| 24         | H1-B-HE-2                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal 2(B)                               |  |  |
| 25         | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 26         | VH                               | OUT        | Power supply (+21.5V)  |  |  |
| 27         | H1-D-DIA2                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 2(D)                                 |  |  |
| 28         | H1-E-HE-8                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal8(E)                                |  |  |
| 29         | H1-E-DIA2                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 2(E)                                 |  |  |
| 30         | H1-F-DIA2                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 2(F)                                 |  |  |
| 31         | Н1-Е-НЕ-9                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal9(E)                                |  |  |
| 32         | H1-D-DATA-7-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 7(D)                                 |  |  |
| 33         | H1-D-HE-6                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal 6(D)                               |  |  |
| 34         | H1-C-DATA-5-0D                   | OUT        | Odd head L data signal 5(C)                                  |  |  |
| 35         | H1-C-DATA-4-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 4(C)                                 |  |  |
| 36         | H1-A-DATA-1-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 1(A)                                 |  |  |
| 37         | H1-A-DIA2                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 2(A)                                 |  |  |
| 38         | H1-B-DIA2                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 2(B)                                 |  |  |
| 39         | H1-C-HE-4                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal8(E)<br>Odd head L data signal 7(D) |  |  |
| 40         | H1-D-DATA-7-OD<br>H1-E-DATA-8-OD | OUT<br>OUT | Odd head L data signal 7(D)<br>Odd head L data signal 8(E)   |  |  |
| 41<br>42   | H1-E-DATA-8-0D<br>H1-F-HE-10     | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal 10(F)                              |  |  |
| 42         | H1-F-DATA-11-EV                  | OUT        | Even head L data signal 11(F)                                |  |  |
| 43<br>44   | H1-F-DATA-8-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 1(F)<br>Even head L data signal 8(F) |  |  |
| 44         | H1-D-DATA-6-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 6(D)                                 |  |  |
| 45         | HI-C-DIA2                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 2(C)                                 |  |  |
| 47         | H1-C-DATA-5-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal 5(C)                                 |  |  |
| 48         | H1-B-DIA1                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 1(B)                                 |  |  |
| 49         | Н1-А-НЕ-О                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal 0(A)                               |  |  |
| 50         | H1-B-DATA-2-OD                   | OUT        | Odd head L data signal 2(B)                                  |  |  |
| 51         | H1-B-DATA-3-OD                   | OUT        | Odd head L data signal 2(B)                                  |  |  |
| 52         | H1-C-DATA-4-OD                   | OUT        | Odd head L data signal 4(C)                                  |  |  |
| 53         | GND                              | -          | GND  |  |  |
| 54         | GND                              | -          | GND  |  |  |
| 55         | GND                              | -          | GND  |  |  |
| 56         | H1-F-DATA-11-OD                  | OUT        | Odd head L data signal 11(F)                                 |  |  |
| 57         | H1-E-DATA-9-EV                   | OUT        | Even head L data signal9(E)                                  |  |  |
| 58         | GND                              | -          | GND  |  |  |
| 59         | H1-D-DATA-6-OD                   | OUT        | Odd head L data signal6(D)                                   |  |  |
| 60         | Н1-С-НЕ-5                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal 5(C)                               |  |  |
| 61         | Н1-В-НЕ-3                        | OUT        | Head L heat enable signal 3(B)                               |  |  |
| 62         | H1-A-DIA1                        | IN         | Heal L DI sensor signal 1(A)                                 |  |  |
|            |                                  |            |  |  |  |

| J24               | 24              |        |                                |  |  |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin<br>Numbe<br>r | Signal name     | IN/OUT | Function                       |  |  |
| 63                | H1-A-DATA-1-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal1(A)     |  |  |
| 64                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 65                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 66                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 67                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 68                | H1-F-DATA-10-OD | OUT    | Odd head L data signal 10(F)   |  |  |
| 69                | H1-F-DIA1       | IN     | Heal L DI sensor signal 1(F)   |  |  |
| 70                | H1-D-HE-7       | OUT    | Head L heat enable signal 7(D) |  |  |
| 71                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 72                | H1-CLK          | OUT    | Head L clock signal            |  |  |
| 73                | H1-LT           | OUT    | Head L latch signal            |  |  |
| 74                | H1-B-DATA-2-EV  | OUT    | Even head L data signal 2(B)   |  |  |
| 75                | H1-A-DATA-0-OD  | OUT    | Odd head L data signal0(A)     |  |  |
| 76                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 77                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 78                | GND             | -      | GND                            |  |  |

=

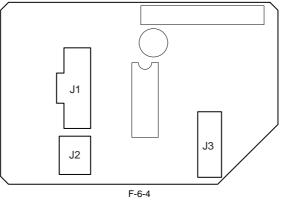
# 6.2.3 Power supply



| CN1        | CN1         |        |                                   |  |
|------------|-------------|--------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Pin Number | Signal name | IN/OUT | Function                          |  |
| 1          | AC(H)       | -      | Power supply (AC 120V or AC 230V) |  |
| 2          | AC(H)       | -      | Power supply (AC 120V or AC 230V) |  |

| CN2 (Connect | CN2 (Connect to main board) |        |                                   |  |  |
|--------------|-----------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin Number   | Signal name                 | IN/OUT | Function                          |  |  |
| 1            | HD1_VHFBH                   | IN     | VH feedback voltage +             |  |  |
| 2            | HD1_VHFBG                   | IN     | VH feedback voltage -             |  |  |
| 3            | VH                          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)             |  |  |
| 4            | GND                         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 5            | VH                          | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)             |  |  |
| 6            | GND                         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 7            | RGV20(VCC)                  | OUT    | Power supply (+21.5V)             |  |  |
| 8            | GND                         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 9            | VM                          | OUT    | Power supply (+26V)               |  |  |
| 10           | GND                         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 11           | VM2                         | OUT    | Power supply (+26V)               |  |  |
| 12           | GND                         | -      | GND                               |  |  |
| 13           | VH_ENB                      | IN     | VH power supply ON/OFF signal     |  |  |
| 14           | PW_CONT                     | IN     | Normal/power saving switch signal |  |  |

# 6.2.4 Roll feed unit PCB



| J1 (Connect to | J1 (Connect to main board) |        |                                 |  |
|----------------|----------------------------|--------|---------------------------------|--|
| Pin Number     | Signal name                | IN/OUT | Function                        |  |
| 1              | GND                        | -      | GND                             |  |
| 2              | GND                        | -      | GND                             |  |
| 3              | ROLL_CLK                   | IN     | Roll motor driver clock signal  |  |
| 4              | ROLL_DAT                   | IN     | Roll motor driver data signal   |  |
| 5              | ROLL_STB                   | IN     | Roll motor driver strobe signal |  |

| J1 (Connect to | (1 (Connect to main board) |        |                                |  |  |
|----------------|----------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Pin Number     | Signal name                | IN/OUT | Function                       |  |  |
| 6              | /ROLL_SLEEP                | IN     | Roll motor driver sleep signal |  |  |
| 7              | VM                         | IN     | Power supply (+26V)            |  |  |
| 8              | VM                         | IN     | Power supply (+26V)            |  |  |
| 9              | ROLL_UNIT                  | OUT    | Roll unit detection signal     |  |  |
| 10             | ROLL_PAPER_SNS             | OUT    | Roll media sensor signal       |  |  |
| 11             | ROLL_CAM_SNS               | OUT    | Roll cam sensor signal         |  |  |
| 12             | GND                        | -      | GND                            |  |  |
| 13             | OPT_5V                     | IN     | Power supply (+5V)             |  |  |

\_

## T-6-29

| J2 (Roll media se | J2 (Roll media sensor ) |        |                          |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------------------|--------|--------------------------|--|--|
| Pin Number        | Signal name             | IN/OUT | Function                 |  |  |
| 1                 | +5V                     | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)       |  |  |
| 2                 | GND                     | -      | GND                      |  |  |
| 3                 | ROLL_PAPER_SNS          | IN     | Roll media sensor signal |  |  |

| J3 (Roll cam se | (3 (Roll cam sensor, roll motor) |        |                            |  |  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|--|--|
| Pin Number      | Signal name                      | IN/OUT | Function                   |  |  |
| 1               | +5V                              | OUT    | Power supply (+5V)         |  |  |
| 2               | GND                              | -      | GND                        |  |  |
| 3               | ROLL_CAM_SNS                     | IN     | Roll cam sensor signal     |  |  |
| 4               | GND                              | -      | GND                        |  |  |
| 5               | ROLL_OUTAP                       | OUT    | Roll motor drive signal AP |  |  |
| 6               | ROLL_OUTAM                       | OUT    | Roll motor power supply AM |  |  |
| 7               | ROLL_OUTBP                       | OUT    | Roll motor drive signal BP |  |  |
| 8               | ROLL_OUTBM                       | OUT    | Roll motor power supply BM |  |  |

# 6.3 Version Up

# 6.3.1 Firmware Update Tool

Use of the following tools allows you to update the firmware of the main controller incorporated in the printer.

- GARO Firmware Update Tool L Printer Service Tool

#### 1. GARO Firmware Update Tool

GARO Firmware Update Tool is the same as that for user.

#### Procedure:

- Start CARO Firmware Update Tool.
   Place the printer in the online mode.
- 4) The data shown on the LCD on the operation panel changes and the firmware is updated automatically.
  5) When firmware update is completed, the printer will start again.

File transfer route: USB, IEEE1394, network

# 2. L Printer Service Tool

Procedure:

- 1) Start L Printer Service Tool.

- Place the printer is the online mode.
   Specify the firmware file(jdl) and then transfer it.
   The data shown on the LCD on the operation panel changes and the firmware is updated automatically.
   When firmware update is completed, the printer will start again.

File transfer route: USB, IEEE1394, network

# 6.4 Service Tools

# 6.4.1 Tool List

## T-6-31

| General-purpose tools     | Remarks                                 |  |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| Long Phillips screwdriver | Inserting and removing screws           |  |
| Phillips screwdriver      | Inserting and removing screws           |  |
| Flat-head screwdriver     | Removing the E-ring                     |  |
| Needle-nose pliers        | Inserting and removing the spring parts |  |
| Hex key wrench            | Inserting and removing hexagonal screws |  |
| Flat brush                | Applying grease                         |  |
| Lint free paper           | Wiping off ink                          |  |
| Rubber gloves             | Preventing ink stains                   |  |

| Special-purpose tools                   | Remarks                         |  |
|---|---------------------------------|--|
| Carriage Wire Tool<br>(AY3-4493-000)    | Adjusting carriage wire height  |  |
| Grease MOLYKOTE PG-641<br>(CK-0562-000) | Applying to specified locations |  |
| EU-1<br>(QY9-0037-000)                  | Soaks to specified locations    |  |

Chapter 7 SERVICE MODE

# Contents

| 7.1 Service Mode                  | 7-1 |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 7.1.1 Service Mode Operation      | 7-1 |
| 7.1.2 Map of the Service Mode     |     |
| 7.1.3 Details of Service Mode     |     |
| 7.1.4 Sample Printout             |     |
| 7.2 Special Mode                  |     |
| 7.2.1 Special Modes for Servicing |     |

# 7.1 Service Mode

# 7.1.1 Service Mode Operation

a) How to enter the Service mode Enter the Service mode following the procedure below.

1) Turn off the printer.

2) Turn on the printer while holding down the [Paper Source] button and [Information] button.
 \* Keep pressing the above buttons until "Initializing" appears on the display.
 3) "S" is displayed in the upper right corner of the display showing the version.
 4) After display of "Online", pressing the [Menu] button displays the SERVICE MODE top menu and the MESSAGE LED flashes.

\* The Service mode is added to the options in the Main menu. The Service mode can be entered even in the error status (when an error message is shown on the display) by turning the power off and then using the above key operation.

# **b) How to exit the Service mode** Turn off the printer.

#### c) Key operation in the service mode

- Selecting menus and parameters: [◀] or [▶] button
- Going to the next lower-level menu: [  $\blacktriangle$  ] button
- Going to the next higher-level menu: [▼] key
   Determining a selected menu or parameter: [OK] button

# 7.1.2 Map of the Service Mode

The hierarchy of menus and parameters in the Service mode is shown below. T-7-1

| First Level | Second Level    | Third Level     | Fourth Level                       | Fifth Level                           |                             |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| DISPLAY     | PRINTINF        | YES/NO          | : Select YES to execute<br>print   |                                       |                             |
|             | SYSTEM          | S/N             |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | TYPE            |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | LF TYPE         |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | TMP             |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | SIZE LF         |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | SIZE LF         |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | SIZE CR         |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | SIZE CR         |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | HEAD            | S/N             |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | LOT             |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | INK             | C               |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | nuk             |                 |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | BK              |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | WARNING         | 1               |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | WARNING         |                 |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | 20              |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | ERROR           | 1               |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | EKKUK           |                 |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 |                 |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | DW CUECU        | 20              |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | INK CHECK       | 000000          |                                    |                                       |                             |
| I/O DISPLAY | I/O DISPLAY 1   | _               |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | I/O DISPLAY 2   |                 |                                    | _                                     |                             |
| ADJUST      | PRINT PATTERN   | NOZZLE 1        | : Press the [OK] button to execute |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | NOZZLE 2        | : Press the [OK] button to execute |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | NOZZLE 3        | : Press the [OK] button to execute |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | OPTICAL AXIS    | : Press the [OK] button to execute |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | LF & HAKUSYA    |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 | SENSOR CHECK    |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | HEAD ADJ.       | MANUAL HEAD ADJ | DETAIL                             | : Press the [OK]<br>button to execute |                             |
|             |                 |                 | BASIC                              | : Press the [OK]<br>button to execute |                             |
|             |                 | ADJ. SETTING    | А                                  | A-1                                   | : Adjustment value<br>entry |
|             |                 |                 |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 |                 |                                    | A-24                                  | : Adjustment value<br>entry |
|             |                 |                 |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             |                 |                 | F                                  | F-1                                   | : Adjustment value<br>entry |
|             |                 |                 | SAVE SETTINGS                      | YES/NO                                |                             |
|             |                 | RESET SETTINGS  | YES/NO                             |                                       |                             |
|             | NOZZLE CHK POS. | YES/NO          |                                    |                                       |                             |
|             | GAP CALIB.      | YES/NO          |                                    |                                       |                             |
| REPLACE     | CUTTER          | YES/NO          |                                    |                                       |                             |

| Second Level<br>PRINTER | Third Level LIFE TTL LIFE ROLL LIFE CUTSHEET | Fourth Level  | Fifth Level   |
|-------------------------|--|---|---|
| PRINTER                 | LIFE ROLL                                    |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
|                         | LIEF CUTCHEET                                |   |   |
|                         | LIFE CUISHEEI                                |   |   |
|                         | LIFE CASSETTE                                |   |   |
|                         | LIFE A                                       |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
|                         | LIFE F                                       |   |   |
|                         | POWER ON                                     |   |   |
|                         | W-INK  |   |   |
|                         | CUTTER                                       |   |   |
|                         | WIPE   |   |   |
| CARRIAGE                | PRINT  |   |   |
|                         | CR COUNT                                     |   |   |
|                         | CR DIST.                                     |   |   |
|                         | PRINT COUNT                                  |   |   |
| PURGE                   | CLN-A-1                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-2                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-3                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-6                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-7                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-10                                     |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-11                                     |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-15                                     |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-16                                     |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-17                                     |   |   |
|                         | CLN-A-TTL                                    |   |   |
|                         | CLN-M-1                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-M-4                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-M-5                                      |   |   |
|                         | CLN-M-6                                      |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
| CLEAR                   |  |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
|                         | CLR-MTC EXC.                                 |   |   |
|                         | CLR-HEAD EXC.                                |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
|                         |  |   |   |
|                         | CLR-UNIT H EXC.                              | -   |   |
|                         |  | -   |   |
|                         |  | -   |   |
|                         |  | -   |   |
|                         |  | -   |   |
|                         |  | -   |   |
|                         |  | -   |   |
| F                       | PURGE  | CARRIAGE PRINT<br>CR COUNT<br>CR OUNT<br>PRINT COUNT<br>PURGE CLN-A-1<br>CLN-A-2<br>CLN-A-3<br>CLN-A-3<br>CLN-A-6<br>CLN-A-6<br>CLN-A-7<br>CLN-A-10<br>CLN-A-10<br>CLN-A-10<br>CLN-A-11<br>CLN-A-15<br>CLN-A-15<br>CLN-A-16<br>CLN-A-17<br>CLN-A-17<br>CLN-A-17<br>CLN-A-17<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-2<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-6<br>CLN-MTTL<br>CLR-INK CONSUME<br>CLR-UNIT A EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT B EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT D EXC. | CARRIAGE PRINT<br>CR COUNT<br>CR DIST.<br>PRINT COUNT<br>PURGE CLN-A-1<br>CLN-A-2<br>CLN-A-3<br>CLN-A-6<br>CLN-A-3<br>CLN-A-6<br>CLN-A-7<br>CLN-A-10<br>CLN-A-10<br>CLN-A-10<br>CLN-A-11<br>CLN-A-15<br>CLN-A-15<br>CLN-A-16<br>CLN-A-17<br>CLN-A-17<br>CLN-A-17<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-1<br>CLN-M-4<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-6<br>CLN-M-5<br>CLN-M-6<br>CLN-MTTL<br>CLR-UTTE EXC.<br>CLR-UTTE EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT A EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT A EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT B EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT B EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT F EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT F EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT F EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT F EXC.<br>CLR-UNIT P EXC. |

| First Level | Second Level | Third Level        | Fourth Level | Fifth Level |
|-------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|-------------|
| COUNTER     | EXCHANGE     | CUTTER EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | MTC EXC.           |              |             |
|             |              | HEAD EXC.          |              |             |
|             |              | BOARD EXC.(M/B)    |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT A EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT B EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT D EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT F EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT H EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT L EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT P EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT Q EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT R EXC.        |              |             |
|             |              | UNIT V EXC.        |              |             |
|             | DETAIL-CNT   | MOVE PRINTER       |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK CHK(C)       |              |             |
|             |              |                    |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK CHK(BK)      |              |             |
|             |              | MEDIACONFIG-CNT    |              |             |
|             | INK-USE1     | INK-USE1(C)        | _            |             |
|             |              | <br>INK-USE1(BK)   | _            |             |
|             |              | INK-USE1(TTL)      |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-USE1(C)      |              |             |
|             |              | <br>N-INK-USE1(BK) |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-USE1(TTL)    |              |             |
|             | INK-USE2     | INK-USE2(C)        |              |             |
|             | INK-05E2     |                    |              |             |
|             |              | INK-USE2(BK)       |              |             |
|             |              | INK-USE2(TTL)      |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-USE2(C)      |              |             |
|             |              |                    |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-USE2(BK)     |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-USE2(TTL)    |              |             |
|             | INK-EXC      | INK-EXC(C)         |              |             |
|             |              |                    |              |             |
|             |              | <br>INK-EXC(BK)    |              |             |
|             |              | INK-EXC(TTL)       |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-EXC(C)       |              |             |
|             |              |                    |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-EXC(BK)      |              |             |
|             |              | N-INK-EXC(DK)      |              |             |
|             |              | THIR-EAC(TIL)      |              |             |

=

| First Level | Second Level    | Third Level                | Fourth Level | Fifth Level |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| COUNTER     | MEDIA 1         | NAME                       |              |             |
|             |                 | TTL                        |              |             |
|             |                 | TTL                        |              |             |
|             |                 | ROLL                       |              |             |
|             |                 | ROLL                       |              |             |
|             |                 | CUTSHEET                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CUTSHEET                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CASSETTE                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CASSETTE                   |              |             |
|             |                 |                            |              |             |
|             | MEDIA 7         | NAME                       |              |             |
|             |                 | TTL                        |              |             |
|             |                 | TTL                        |              |             |
|             |                 | ROLL                       |              |             |
|             |                 | ROLL                       |              |             |
|             |                 | CUTSHEET                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CUTSHEET                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CASSETTE                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CASSETTE                   |              |             |
|             | MEDIA OTHER     | NAME                       |              |             |
|             |                 | TTL                        |              |             |
|             |                 | TTL                        |              |             |
|             |                 | ROLL                       |              |             |
|             |                 | ROLL                       |              |             |
|             |                 | CUTSHEET                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CUTSHEET                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CASSETTE                   |              |             |
|             |                 | CASSETTE                   |              |             |
|             | MEDIASIZE1 ROLL | P-SQ 24-36                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ 24-36                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ 17-24                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ 17-24                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ -17                   |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ -17<br>P-CNT 24-36    |              |             |
|             |                 | P-CNT 24-36<br>P-CNT 17-24 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-CNT -17                  |              |             |
|             | MEDIASIZE2 ROLL | D-SQ 24-36                 |              |             |
|             | MEDIASIZEZ KOLL | D-SQ 24-36                 |              |             |
|             |                 | D-SQ 17-24                 | —            |             |
|             |                 | D-SQ 17-24<br>D-SQ 17-24   |              |             |
|             |                 | D-SQ -17                   | —            |             |
|             |                 | D-SQ -17<br>D-SQ -17       |              |             |
|             |                 | D-CNT 24-36                |              |             |
|             |                 | D-CNT 17-24                |              |             |
|             |                 | D-CNT -17                  |              |             |
|             | MEDIASIZE1 CUT  | P-SQ 24-36                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ 24-36                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ 17-24                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ 17-24                 |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ -17                   |              |             |
|             |                 | P-SQ -17                   |              |             |
|             |                 | P-CNT 24-36                |              |             |
|             |                 | P-CNT 17-24                |              |             |
|             |                 | P-CNT -17                  |              |             |

| T-7-5 |  |
|-------|--|
|       |  |

=

| First Level | Second Level  | Third Level  | Fourth Level                         | Fifth Level  |
|-------------|---|--|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| COUNTER     | MEDIASIZE2 CUT  | D-SQ 24-36   |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-SQ 24-36   |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-SQ 17-24   |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-SQ 17-24   |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-SQ -17   |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-SQ -17   |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-CNT 24-36  |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-CNT 17-24  |                                      |              |
|             |   | D-CNT -17  |                                      |              |
|             | HEAD DOT CNT. 1   | С  |                                      |              |
|             |   |  |                                      |              |
|             |   | BK   |                                      |              |
|             |   | TTL  |                                      |              |
|             | HEAD DOT CNT. 2   | С  |                                      |              |
|             |   |  |                                      |              |
|             |   | ВК   |                                      |              |
|             |   | TTL  | 1                                    |              |
|             | PARTS CNT.  | COUNTER A  | OK/W1/W2/E                           |              |
|             |   |  | PARTS A1                             | 1:00         |
|             |   |  |                                      | 2:00         |
|             |   |  |                                      | 3:00         |
|             |   |  |                                      | 4:00         |
|             |   |  |                                      |              |
|             |   | COUNTER V  | OK/W1/W2/E                           |              |
|             |   |  | PARTS V1                             | 1:00         |
|             |   |  |                                      | 2:00         |
|             |   |  |                                      | 3:00         |
|             |   |  |                                      | 4:00         |
| SETTING     | Pth   | ON/OFF   |                                      |              |
|             | RTC   | DATE   | XXXX/XX/XX                           | : Date entry |
|             |   | TIME   | XX:XX                                | : Time entry |
|             |   |  |                                      |              |
|             | PV AUTO JUDGE   | ON/PFF   |                                      |              |
|             | PV AUTO JUDGE<br>CAS.PRE PRINT  | ON/PFF<br>ON/OFF   | -                                    |              |
| INITIALIZE  |   |  | -                                    |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT   | ON/OFF   | -                                    |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG   | ON/OFF<br>: Press the [OK] button to clear   | -                                    |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR  | ON/OFF<br>: Press the [OK] button to clear<br>: Press the [OK] button to clear   | -                                    |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST  | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear         : Press the [OK] button to clear         : Press the [OK] button to clear  |                                      |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK   | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear   |                                      |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE  | ON/OFF<br>: Press the [OK] button to clear<br>: Press the [OK] button to clear<br>: Press the [OK] button to clear<br>: Press the [OK] button to clear   |                                      |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT   | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear   |                                      |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT   | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear   |                                      |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT<br>W-INK-CHG CNT<br>HEAD-CHG CNT                  | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear  | : Press the [OK]                     |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT<br>W-INK-CHG CNT                                  | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear  | : Press the [OK]<br>button to clear  |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT<br>W-INK-CHG CNT<br>HEAD-CHG CNT                  | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear  |                                      | -            |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT<br>W-INK-CHG CNT<br>HEAD-CHG CNT                  | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear         : PARTS A1  | button to clear<br>: Press the [OK]  | -            |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT<br>W-INK-CHG CNT<br>HEAD-CHG CNT<br>PARTS-CHG CNT | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear         : PARTS A1            PARTS V1  | : Press the [OK]<br>button to clear  |              |
| INITIALIZE  | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT<br>W-INK-CHG CNT<br>HEAD-CHG CNT                  | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear         : Press the [OK] button to clear | button to clear<br>: Press the [OK]  |              |
| NITIALIZE   | CAS.PRE PRINT<br>WARNIG<br>ERROR<br>ADJUST<br>W-INK<br>PURGE<br>INK-USE CNT<br>CUTTER-CHG CNT<br>W-INK-CHG CNT<br>HEAD-CHG CNT<br>PARTS-CHG CNT | ON/OFF         : Press the [OK] button to clear         : PARTS A1            PARTS V1  | : Press the [OK]<br>: Press the [OK] |              |

# 7.1.3 Details of Service Mode

This section provides details of the Service mode menu.

a) **DISPLAY** Displays and prints the printer information.

1) PRINF INF

Prints adjustment values in the User menu, [DISPLAY] and [COUNTER] parameters on A4-size or lager paper. When a roll media is used, the layout is optimized according to the media width.

2) SYSTEM Displays the printer information shown below.

| Display | Description  | Unit      |
|---------|--|-----------|
| S/N     | Serial number of printer   | -         |
| TYPE    | Type setting on main controller PCB<br>* iPF610/600 is represented by 24.                  | -         |
| LF TYPE | Feed roller type: 0 or 1   | -         |
| TMP     | Ambient temperature  | degrees C |
| SIZE LF | Detected size of loaded media (feed direction)<br>0 is always detected for the roll media. | mm        |
| SIZE LF | Detected size of loaded media (feed direction)<br>0 is always detected for the roll media. | inch      |
| SIZE CR | Detected size of loaded media (carriage scan direction)                                    | mm        |
| SIZE CR | Detected size of loaded media (carriage scan direction)                                    | inch      |

3) HEAD Displays the following EEPROM information of the printhead.

T-7-7

| Display | Description                |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------|----------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| S/N     | Serial number of printhead |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LOT     | Lot number of printhead    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### 4) INK

Displays the numbers of days passed since installation of the following ink tanks.

T-7-8

| Display | Description   | Unit   |
|---------|---|--------|
| BK      | Number of days passed since the BK ink tank was installed   | Day(s) |
| MBK     | Number of days passed since the MBK ink tank was installed  | Day(s) |
| MBK2    | Number of days passed since the MBK2 ink tank was installed | Day(s) |
| С       | Number of days passed since the C ink tank was installed    | Day(s) |
| М       | Number of days passed since the M ink tank was installed    | Day(s) |
| Y       | Number of days passed since the Y ink tank was installed    | Day(s) |

#### 5) WARNING

Displays the warning history (up to 20 events). The newest event has the smallest history number.

6) ERROR

Displays the error history (up to 20 events). The newest event has the smallest history number.

7) INK CHECK

Displays the history of execution of turning off the remaining ink level detection (by using the refilled ink tank) in the order of C, M, Y, MBK, MBK, BK. 0: No execution 1: Executed at least once

# b) I/O DISPLAY

The information of each sensor and switch is shown in the display.

Sensor and switch status is shown in the display. ON=1 OFF or not used=0 ON=1OFF or not used = 0

Screen 1

| T-7-9 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |           |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----------|
| I     | / | 0 |   | D | Ι | S | Р | L | А | Y |   | 1 |   |   |   | Upper row |
| 0     | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Lower row |

-

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 (Display position)

Screen 2

|   | T-7-10 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |           |
|---|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----------|
| I | /      | 0 |   | D | Ι | S | Р | L | А | Y |   | 2 |   |   |   | Upper row |
| 0 | 0      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Lower row |

17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 (Display position)

Screens 1 and 2 are selectable with the  $[\checkmark]$  and  $[\blacktriangleright]$  buttons. These screens display the associated sensor status as listed in the table below.

T-7-11

| Display<br>position | Sensor name                        | LCD display contents                                 |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| 1                   | Pump Cam Sensor                    | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 2                   | Valve Open/Closed Detection Sensor | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 3                   | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 4                   | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 5                   | Spur Cam Sensor                    | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 6                   | Lift Cam Sensor                    | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 7                   | Feed Roller HP Sensor              | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 8                   | Top Cover Sensor                   | 0: Cover open , 1: Cover close                       |
| 9                   | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 10                  | Ink Tank Cover Switch              | 0: Cover open , 1: Cover close                       |
| 11                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 12                  | Paper Detection Sensor             | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 13                  | Cassette Paper Detection Sensor    | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 14                  | Cassette Detection Sensor          | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 15                  | Cassette Pick-up Sensor            | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 16                  | Cassette Cam Sensor                | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 17                  | Roll Media Sensor                  | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 18                  | Roll Cam Sensor                    | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 19                  | Cutter Lift Sensor                 | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 20                  | Cutter Right Position Sensor       | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 21                  | Cutter HP Sensor                   | 0: Sensor ON , 1: Sensor OFF                         |
| 22                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 23                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 24                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 25                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 26                  | Roll unit detection                | 0: Roll unit not detected, 1: Roll unit detected     |
| 27                  | Cutter unit detection              | 0: Cutter unit not detected, 1: Cutter unit detected |
| 28                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 29                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 30                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 31                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |
| 32                  | (Not Used)                         | 0  |

# c) ADJUST

Performs adjustments and prints the adjustment and check patterns necessary for adjusting the printer parts.

## 1) PRINT PATTERN

# T-7-12

| Display      | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| NOZZLE 1     | Prints the nozzle check pattern by single direction/ single pass without using the non-<br>discharging back up.<br>It is used to check for the non-discharging nozzles.<br>- Media size: A4<br>- Media type: any  |
| NOZZLE 2     | Print a 100% solid print pattern (used to check the ink reaction that cannot be checked with "NOZZLE 1") in the single path direction. Use this method when checking blocked nozzles.<br>- Use paper with a height equal to or longer than that of A4-sized paper (in portrait orientation).<br>- Any media type is acceptable.   |
| NOZZLE 3     | <ul> <li>Print a 100% solid print pattern (used to check the ink reaction that cannot be checked with "NOZZLE 1") in the single path direction. Use this method when checking blocked nozzles. (The print drive control method is different from that for "NOZZLE 2".)</li> <li>Use paper with a height equal to or longer than that of A4-sized paper (in portrait orientation).</li> <li>Any media type is acceptable.</li> </ul> |
| OPTICAL AXIS | Prints the pattern and adjusts the optical axis of the multi sensor.<br>For details, refer to "Disassembly/Reassembly" > "Adjustment and Setup Items" > "Procedure<br>after replacing the carriage unit or multi sensor".<br>- Media type: photo glossy paper   |
| LF & HAKUSHA | * For Factory   |
| SENSOR CHECK | * For Factory   |

LF & HAKUSYA and SENSOR CHECK are intended for factory adjustment purposes. No adjustment by service personnel is required.

2) HEAD ADJ. Set or initialize the registration adjustment values of each printheads.

T-7-13

| Display         |                 |            | Description  |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------|--|
| MANUAL HEAD ADJ | DETAIL<br>BASIC |            | Prints the detail patterns for the manual head adjustment.<br>After printing, the mode will change to [ADJ. SETTING]. Check the printed patterns and input the set values. |
|                 |                 |            | Prints the basic patterns for the manual head adjustment.<br>After printing, the mode will change to [ADJ. SETTING]. Check the printed patterns and input the set values.  |
| ADJ. SETTING    | A to F          | A-1 to F-1 | This mode is to input the registration adjustment values.<br>It is possible to return the values to the former one by printing the status print before changing the value. |
|                 | SAVE S          | ETTINGS    | Save the registration adjustment values that has been input.   |
| RESET SETTINGS  |                 |            | Initialize the registration adjustment values (to 0).  |

3) NOZZLE CHK POS. This mode for adjusting the optical axis of the head management sensor. For details, refer to "Disassembly/Reassembly" > "Adjustment and Setup Items" > "Procedure after replacing the head management sensor".

# 4) GAP CLIB.

This mode measures the gap between the printhead and media by multi sensor and corrects the calibration value.

d) REPLACE 1) CUTTER This mode is for replacing the cutter unit.

e) COUNTER Displays the life (operation frequency and time) of each unit, print counts for each media type, and else. The count values can be printed from [PRINT INF].

1) PRINTER: Counters related to product life

# T-7-14

| Display       | Description  | Unit   |
|---------------|--|--------|
| LIFE TTL      | Cumulative number of printed media (equivalent of A4)                          | sheets |
| LIFE ROLL     | Cumulative number of printed roll media (equivalent of A4)                     | sheets |
| LIFE CUTSHEET | Cumulative number of printed cut sheets (equivalent to A4)                     | sheets |
| LIFE CASSETTE | Cumulative number of printed cut sheets at cassette pick-up (equivalent to A4) | sheets |
| LIFE A-F      | Cumulative number of printed media for environments A to F                     | sheets |
| POWER ON      | Cumulative power-on time (excluding the sleep time)                            | Hours  |
| W-INK         | Remaining capacity of the maintenance cartridge                                | %      |
| CUTTER        | ER Number of cutting operations (count as 1 by moving back and forth)          |        |
| WIPE          | Number of wiping operations  | Times  |

# 2) CARRIAGE: Counters related to carriage unit

## T-7-15

| Display     | Description  | Unit  |
|-------------|--|-------|
| PRINT       | Cumulative printing time   | Hours |
| CR COUNT    | Cumulative carriage scan count (count as 1 by moving back and forth) | Times |
| CR DIST.    | Cumulative carriage scan distance (count as 1 by moving 210mm)       | Times |
| PRINT COUNT | Cumulative print end count (count as 1 by capping)                   | Times |

3) PURGE: Counters related to purge unit

|           | T-7-16   |       |
|-----------|--|-------|
| Display   | Description  | Unit  |
| CLN-A-1   | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 1 (normal suction) operations                                      | Times |
| CLN-A-2   | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 2 (ink level adjusting) operations                                 | Times |
| CLN-A-3   | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 3 (initial filling) operations                                     | Times |
| CLN-A-6   | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 6 (strong normal suction) operations                               | Times |
| CLN-A-7   | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 7 (aging) operations   |       |
| CLN-A-10  | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 10 (ink filling after secondary transportation) operations         | Times |
| CLN-A-11  | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 11 (ink filling after head replacement) operations                 | Times |
| CLN-A-15  | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 15 (dot count small suction) operations                            | Times |
| CLN-A-16  | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 16 (sedimented ink agitation) operations                           | Times |
| CLN-A-17  | Cumulative number of automatic cleaning 17 (small suction) operations                                      | Times |
| CLN-A-TTL | Total number of automatic cleaning operations  | Times |
| CLN-M-1   | Cumulative number of manual cleaning 1 (normal suction) operations   | Times |
| CLN-M-4   | Cumulative number of manual cleaning 4 (ink draining from head after head replacement) operations          | Times |
| CLN-M-5   | Cumulative number of manual cleaning 5 (ink draining from head and tube before transportation ) operations | Times |
| CLN-M-6   | Cumulative number of manual cleaning 6 (normal strong suction) operations                                  | Times |
| CLN-M-TTL | Total number of manual cleaning operations   | Times |

### 4) CLEAR: Counters related to counter initialization

| Display          | Description  | Unit  |
|------------------|--|-------|
| CLR-INK CONSUME  | Cumulative count of ink section consumption amount clearing                    | Times |
| CLR-CUTTER EXC.  | Cumulative count of cutter replacement count clearing                          | Times |
| CLR-MTC EXC.     | Cumulative count of maintenance cartridge replacement count clearing           | Times |
| CLR-HEAD EXC.    | Cumulative count of printhead replacement count clearing                       | Times |
| CLR-UNIT A EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit A(waste ink system) replacement count clearing        | Times |
| CLR-UNIT B EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit B(platen duct) replacement count clearing             | Times |
| CLR-UNIT D EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit D(carriage unit) replacement count clearing           | Times |
| CLR-UNIT F EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit F(ink supply system) replacement count clearing       | Times |
| CLR-UNIT H EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit H(purge) replacement count clearing                   | Times |
| CLR-UNIT L EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit L(head management sensor) replacement count clearing  | Times |
| CLR-UNIT P EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit P(feed motor) replacement count clearing              | Times |
| CLR-UNIT Q EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit F(cassette pick-up system) replacement count clearing | Times |
| CLR-UNIT R EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit R(spur cam) replacement count clearing                | Times |
| CLR-UNIT V EXC.  | Cumulative count of unit V(mist fan unit) replacement count clearing           | Times |
| CLR-FACTORY CNT. | For factory  | Times |

5) EXCHANGE: Counters related to parts replacement

### T-7-18

| Display         | Description   | Unit  |
|-----------------|---|-------|
| CUTTER EXC.     | Cutter replacement count<br>(Count of executing cutter replacement mode)  | Times |
| MTC EXC.        | Maintenance cartridge replacement count   | Times |
| HEAD EXC.       | Printhead replacement count   | Times |
| BOARD EXC.(M/B) | Main controller PCB replacement count   | Times |
| UNIT A EXC.     | Unit A (waste ink system) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS A])        | Times |
| UNIT B EXC.     | Unit B (waste ink system) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS B])        | Times |
| UNIT D EXC.     | Unit D (carriage unit) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS D])           | Times |
| UNIT F EXC.     | Unit F (ink supply system) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS F])       | Times |
| UNIT H EXC.     | Unit H (purge unit) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS H])              | Times |
| UNIT L EXC.     | Unit L (head management sensor) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS L])  | Times |
| UNIT P EXC.     | Unit P (feed unit) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS P])               | Times |
| UNIT Q EXC.     | Unit Q (cassette pick-up system) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS Q]) | Times |
| UNIT R EXC.     | Unit R (pick-up system) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS R])          | Times |
| UNIT V EXC.     | Unit V(mist fan unit) replacement count<br>(Count of executing [INITIALIZE] > [PARTS COUNTER] > [PARTS V])            | Times |

### 6) DETAIL-CNT: Other counters

### T-7-19

| Display         | Description  | Unit  |
|-----------------|--|-------|
| MOVE PRINTER    | Count of [Move Printer] operations   | Times |
| N-INKCHK(XX)    | XX: Ink color<br>Count of turning off the ink remaining level detection for each color | Times |
| MEDIACONFIG-CNT | Count of media registered by media editor  | Times |

7) INK-USE1: Counters related to ink consumption

### T-7-20

| Display         | Description  | Unit |
|-----------------|--|------|
| INK-USE1(XX)    | XX: Ink color<br>Cumulative consumption amount of generic ink  | ml   |
| INK-USE1(TTL)   | Total amount of the cumulative consumption of generic ink      | ml   |
| N-INK-USE1(XX)  | XX: Ink color<br>Cumulative consumption amount of refilled ink | ml   |
| N-INK-USE1(TTL) | Total amount of the cumulative consumption of refilled ink     | ml   |

### 8) INK-USE2: Counters related to ink consumption

T-7-21

| Display         | Description   | Unit |
|-----------------|---|------|
| INK-USE2(XX)    | XX: Ink color<br>Consumption amount of generic ink of the currently installed ink tank. | ml   |
| INK-USE2(TTL)   | Total consumption amount of generic ink of the currently installed ink tanks            | ml   |
| N-INK-USE2(XX)  | XX: Ink color<br>Consumption amount of refilled ink of the currently installed ink tank | ml   |
| N-INK-USE2(TTL) | Total consumption amount of refilled ink of the currently installed ink tanks           | ml   |

9) INK-EXC: Counters related to ink tank replacement

T-7-22

| Display        | Description   | Unit |
|----------------|---|------|
| INK-EXC(XX)    | XX: Ink color<br>Cumulative count of generic ink tank replacement     | ml   |
| INK-EXC(TTL)   | Total amount of tho cumulative count of generic ink tank replacement  | ml   |
| N-INK-EXC(XX)  | XX: Ink color<br>Cumulative count of refilled ink tank replacement    | ml   |
| N-INK-EXC(TTL) | Total amount of tho cumulative count of refilled ink tank replacement | ml   |

# 10) MEDIA x (x: 1 to 7): Counters related to media One to seven media types are displayed individually in order with large cumulative print area.

T-7-23

| Display   | Description  | Unit |
|-----------|--|------|
| NAME      | Media type   | -    |
| TTL       | Total amount of cumulative print area of roll media and cut sheet (metric) | m2   |
| TTL       | Total amount of cumulative print area of roll media and cut sheet (inch)   | Sq.f |
| ROLL      | Cumulative print area of roll media (metric)                               | m2   |
| ROLL      | Cumulative print area of roll media (inch)                                 | Sq.f |
| CUT SHEET | Cumulative print area of cut sheet (metric)                                | m2   |
| CUT SHEET | Cumulative print area of cut sheet (inch)                                  | Sq.f |
| CASSETTE  | Cumulative print area of cut sheet at cassette pick-up (metric)            | m2   |
| CASSETTE  | Cumulative print area of cut sheet at cassette pick-up (inch)              | Sq.f |

11) MEDIA OTHER: Counters related to media Displays the total amount of cumulative print area of the other media type than the above-mentioned

T-7-24

| Display   | Description  | Unit |
|-----------|--|------|
| NAME      | Media type   | -    |
| TTL       | Total amount of cumulative print area of roll media and cut sheet (metric) | m2   |
| TTL       | Total amount of cumulative print area of roll media and cut sheet (inch)   | Sq.f |
| ROLL      | Cumulative print area of roll media (metric)                               | m2   |
| ROLL      | Cumulative print area of roll media (inch)                                 | Sq.f |
| CUT SHEET | Cumulative print area of cut sheet (metric)                                | m2   |
| CUT SHEET | Cumulative print area of cut sheet (inch)                                  | Sq.f |
| CASSETTE  | Cumulative print area of cut sheet at cassette pick-up (metric)            | m2   |
| CASSETTE  | Cumulative print area of cut sheet at cassette pick-up (inch)              | Sq.f |

### 12) MEDIASIZE1 ROLL: Counters related to roll media printing

| Display     | Description  | Unit    |
|-------------|--|---------|
| P-SQ 24-36  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (physical size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| P-SQ 17-24  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (physical size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| P-SQ -17    | Cumulative print area of paper less than 17 inches (physical size)   | m2/Sq.f |
| P-CNT 24-36 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (physical size) | sheets  |
| P-CNT 17-24 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (physical size) | sheets  |
| P-CNT -17   | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper less than 17 inches (physical size)                                       | sheets  |

T-7-25

### 13) MEDIASIZE2 ROLL: Counters related to roll media printing

### T-7-26

| Display     | Description  | Unit    |
|-------------|--|---------|
| D-SQ 24-36  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (data size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| D-SQ 17-24  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (data size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| D-SQ -17    | Cumulative print area of paper less than 17 inches (data size)   | m2/Sq.f |
| D-CNT 24-36 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (data size) | sheets  |
| D-CNT 17-24 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (data size) | sheets  |
| D-CNT -17   | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper less than 17 inches (data size)                                       | sheets  |

### 14) MEDIASIZE1 CUT: Counters related to cut sheet printing

T-7-27

| Display     | Description  | Unit    |
|-------------|--|---------|
| P-SQ 24-36  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (physical size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| P-SQ 17-24  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (physical size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| P-SQ -17    | Cumulative print area of paper less than 17 inches (physical size)   | m2/Sq.f |
| P-CNT 24-36 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (physical size) | sheets  |
| P-CNT 17-24 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (physical size) | sheets  |
| P-CNT -17   | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper less than 17 inches (physical size)                                       | sheets  |

### 15) MEDIASIZE2 CUT: Counters related to cut sheet printing

T-7-28

| Display     | Description  | Unit    |
|-------------|--|---------|
| D-SQ 24-36  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (data size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| D-SQ 17-24  | Cumulative print area of paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (data size)                     | m2/Sq.f |
| D-SQ -17    | Cumulative print area of paper less than 17 inches (data size)   | m2/Sq.f |
| D-CNT 24-36 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 24 inches but less than 36 inches (data size) | sheets  |
| D-CNT 17-24 | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper equal to or larger than 17 inches but less than 24 inches (data size) | sheets  |
| D-CNT -17   | Cumulative number of sheets of A4-equivalent paper less than 17 inches (data size)                                       | sheets  |

16) HEAD DOT CNT.1: Counter related to dot count

T-7-29

| Display | Description   | Unit               |
|---------|---|--------------------|
|         | XX: Ink color<br>Dot counts of each colors of the currently installed printhead | (x 1,000,000) dots |
| TTL     | Total dot counts of each colors of the currently installed printhead            | (x 1,000,000) dots |

### 17) HEAD DOT CNT.2: Counter related to dot count

### T-7-30

| Display | Description   | Unit               |
|---------|---|--------------------|
| XX      | XX: Ink color<br>Cumulative dot counts of each colors | (x 1,000,000) dots |
| TTL     | Total cumulative dot counts of each colors            | (x 1,000,000) dots |

18) PARTS CNT. : Counter related to consumable parts

### T-7-31

| Display   |          |    | Description  |        |  |  |
|-----------|----------|----|--|--------|--|--|
| COUNTER x |          |    | x: Unit number of consumable parts<br>(For detail, refer to "Maintenance and Inspection" > "Consumable Parts")   | Day(s) |  |  |
|           |          |    | Display the status and the days passed since the counter resetting.<br>- Status<br>OK: Use rate (until part replacement) of all consumable parts included in each unit are below 90%.<br>W1: Use rate (until part replacement) of either of the consumable parts included in each unit has reached<br>90% or more.<br>W2: Use rate (until part replacement) of either of the consumable parts included in each unit has reached<br>100%, but no need to stop the printer.<br>E : Use rate (until part replacement) of either of the consumable parts included in each unit has reached<br>100%, and the printer needs to be stopped. |        |  |  |
|           | PARTS yy | 1: | yy: Unit number of consumable parts<br>(For detail, refer to "Maintenance and Inspection" > "Consumable Parts")<br>Counter of the consumable part (current)  |        |  |  |
|           |          | 2: | Life of the consumable part  |        |  |  |
|           |          | 3: | Use rate until part replacement  | %      |  |  |
|           |          | 4: | Counter of the consumable part (accumulate)  |        |  |  |

### f) SETTING

Make various settings.

1) Pth Turn on or off the head pulse rank control function. Default: OFF

2) RTC Set RTC (real time clock) after replacing the lithium battery on the main controller PCB.

T-7-32

|      | Display    | Description |
|------|------------|-------------|
| DATE | yyyy/mm/dd | Set date    |
| TIME | hh:mm      | Set time    |

3) PV AUTO JUDGE Sets ink saver mode. Default: OFF

4) CAS. PRE PRINT Turn on to perform preprinting on cassette pickup. Default: OFF

g) INITIALIZE Clear the [DISPLAY] histories, [ADJUST] settings, [COUNTER] values, and other parameters. T-7-33

| Di               | splay    | Description   |  |  |  |
|------------------|----------|---|--|--|--|
| WARNING          |          | Initialize the history of WARNING.<br>(All displayed contents of [DISPLAY] > [WARNING] will be initialized.)  |  |  |  |
| ERROR            |          | Initialize the history of ERROR.<br>(All displayed contents of [DISPLAY] > [ERROR] will be initialized.)  |  |  |  |
| ADJUST           |          | Initialize the value of band adjustment (by user) and head adjustment.<br>The automatically adjusted value will not be initialized.   |  |  |  |
| W-INK            |          | Initialize the remaining capacity (%) of the maitenance cartridge.<br>(Clear [COUNTER] > [PRINTER] > [W-INK])   |  |  |  |
| PURGE            |          | Initialize the counter related to purge unit.<br>(Clear [COUNTER] > [PURGE])  |  |  |  |
| INK-USE CNT      |          | Initialize the consumption amount of ink.<br>(Clear [COUNTER] > [INK-USE2], and count up [COUNTER] > [CLEAR] > [CLR-INK CONSUME])   |  |  |  |
| CUTTER-CHG CNT   |          | Initialize the cutter unit replacement frequency.<br>(Clear [COUNTER] > [EXCHANGE] > [CUTTER EXC.], and count up [COUNTER] > [CLEAR] > [CLR-CUTTER EXC.])   |  |  |  |
| W-INK-CHG C      | NT       | Initialize the maintenance cartridge replacement frequency.<br>(Clear [COUNTER] > [EXCHANGE] > [MTC EXC.], and count up [COUNTER] > [CLEAR] > [CLR-MTC H  |  |  |  |
| HEAD-CHG CNT     |          | Initialize the printhead replacement frequency.<br>(Clear [COUNTER] > [EXCHANGE] > [HEAD EXC.], and count up [COUNTER] > [CLEAR] > [CLR-HEAD EXC.])   |  |  |  |
| PARTS-CHG<br>CNT | PARTS xx | <pre>xx: Unit number of consumable parts (For details, refer to "Maintenance and Inspection" &gt; "Consumable Parts") Initialize the consumable part replacement frequency. (Clear [COUNTER] &gt; [EXCHANGE] &gt; [UNIT x EXC], and count up [COUNTER] &gt; [CLEAR] &gt; [CLR-UNIT x EXC.])</pre>   |  |  |  |
| PARTS<br>COUNTER | PARTS xx | <ul> <li>xx: Unit number of consumable parts</li> <li>(For details, refer to "Maintenance and Inspection" &gt; "Consumable Parts")</li> <li>Initialize the counter amount of the consumable parts.</li> <li>(Clear [COUNTER] &gt; [PARTS CNT.] &gt; [PARTS x])</li> <li>* After replacing the consumable part, be sure to execute this menu.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |

# 7.1.4 Sample Printout

a) **PRINTINF** A sample printout that is produced by executing [SERVICE MODE] > [DISPLAY] > [PRINTINF] is shown below, along with instructions about how to interpret it.

|    | HEAD S/N:394<br>HEAD LOT:166<br>INK<br>C :0 M :                 | L09A0                                | :0 M               | BK :0M                                  | BK2:0 BK                    | :0  |  |        |
|----|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------|---|-----------------------------|---|--|--------|
|    | WARNING<br>01:0000 02<br>06:0000 07<br>11:0000 12<br>16:0000 17 | 2:0000<br>7:0000<br>2:0000<br>7:0000 | 08:<br>13:         | 0000<br>0000<br>0000<br>0000            | 09:0000 1<br>14:0000 1      | 5:0000<br>0:0000<br>5:0000<br>0:0000                    |  |        |
|    | 11:0000 12<br>16:0000 17  | 2:0000<br>2:0000<br>2:0000           | 08:<br>13:<br>18:  | 0000<br>0000<br>0000<br>0000<br>K:0 MBK | 09:0000 1<br>14:0000 1      | 4:0000<br>0:0000<br>5:0000<br>0:0000                    | 05:0000                                      |        |
| 3) | COUNTER<br>PRINTER<br>LIFE TTL:0<br>LIFE ROLL:01                | IFE CU                               | ITSHE              | ET:0 LIFE                               | E CASSETTE:0                | )   |  |        |
| -  | MEDIA 7   |                                      |                    | MEDIA                                   |                             |   |  | $\sim$ |
|    | NAME :<br>TTL :<br>ROLL :<br>CUTSHEET :<br>CASSETTE :           | 0.0 m2<br>0.0 m2<br>0.0 m2<br>0.0 m  | 2 0.0 :<br>2 0.0 : | sq.f 7<br>sq.f F<br>sq.f (              | ROLL :<br>CUTSHEET :        | OTHER<br>0.0 m2<br>0.0 m2<br>0.0 m2<br>0.0 m2<br>0.0 m2 | 0.0 sq.f<br>0.0 sq.f<br>0.0 sq.f<br>0.0 sq.f |        |
|    | PARTS COUNT   | (a)                                  | ) (b)              | (c)                                     | (d)                         | (e)   | (f)  |        |
|    | COUNTER A :<br>PARTS A1 :<br>COUNTER B :                        | OK<br>OK                             | 36<br>36           | 0.0                                     | 36.1                        | 0%  | 0.0  |        |
|    | PARTS B1 :<br>COUNTER D :<br>PARTS D1<br>PARTS D2 :             | ок                                   | 36                 | 0.0<br>1362<br>377                      | 64.0<br>13028571<br>6700000 | 0%<br>0%<br>0%  | 0.0<br>1362<br>377                           |        |
|    | PARTS D3 :<br>PARTS D4 :<br>COUNTER F :                         | ок                                   | 33<br>36           | 2238                                    | 16500000<br>60000           | 0%<br>0%  | 2238<br>33                                   |        |
|    | PARTS F1 :<br>COUNTER H :                                       | ОК                                   | 36                 | 377                                     | 4000000                     | 0%  | 377  |        |
|    | PARTS H1 :<br>COUNTER L :                                       | ок                                   | 15<br>36           |   | 50000                       | 0%  | 15   |        |
|    | PARTS L1 :<br>COUNTER P :                                       | ОК                                   | 36                 | 4                                       | 12500                       | 0%  | 4  |        |
|    | PARTS P1 :<br>COUNTER Q :                                       | ОК                                   | 36                 | 0                                       | 750                         | 0%  | 0  |        |
|    | PARTS Q1 :<br>COUNTER R :                                       | OK                                   | 36                 | 0                                       | 750                         | 0%  | 0  |        |
|    | PARTS R1 :<br>COUNTER V :<br>PARTS V1 :                         | ок                                   | 36                 | 0<br>0.0                                | 27500<br>15.2               | 0%<br>0%  | 0<br>0.0                                     | ,      |
|    |   | x /                                  |                    |   | $\square$                   | $\square$   | $\square$                                    |        |

### (1) Version numbers of the firmware installed in the printer, boot ROM, and MIT DB format

(2) Printer information For more item details, see "Detail of Service Mode" > "a) Display".

- (3) Counter information For more item details, see "Detail of Service Mode" > "e) Counter".
  (a) Consumables status
  (b) Number of days elapsed since the counter was last reset
  (c) Counter value
  (d) Value with which consumables reach their replacement timing
  (e) Ratio of the current count to the replacement timing
  (f) Cumulative counter value

- (4) Ink saver mode setting(a) Ink saver mode status(b) Number of times ink save mode has been executed (unit: times).

### b) NOZZLE 1

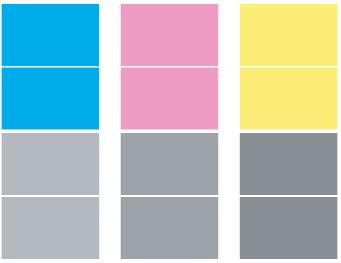
A sample printout that is produced by executing [SERVICE MODE]> [ADJUST]> [PRINT PATTERN]> [NOZZLE 1] is shown below.

# F-7-2

Nozzle Check Pattern SERVICE

### c) NOZZLE 2/NOZZLE 3

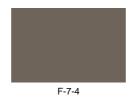
A sample printout that is produced by executing [SERVICE MODE]> [ADJUST]> [PRINT PATTERN]> [NOZZLE 2] or [NOZZLE 3] is shown below.



### F-7-3

### d) OPTICAL AXIS

A sample printout that is produced by executing [SERVICE MODE]> [ADJUST]> [PRINT PATTERN]> [OPTICAL AXIS] is shown below.



e) DETAIL A sample printout that is produced by executing [SERVICE MODE]> [ADJUST]> [HEAD ADJ.] > [AUTO HEAD ADJ]> [DETAIL] is shown below.

|          |                |                |                |                | Pri  | thead Adjustment Pattern |          |     |        |     |     |
|----------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|------|--------------------------|----------|-----|--------|-----|-----|
| A-1      | A-3            | A-5            | A-7            | A-9            | A-11 | B-1                      | B-2      | B-3 | B-4    | B-5 | B-6 |
| 0        | 0              | 0              | 0              | 0              | 0    | 0                        | 0        | 0   | 0      | 0   | 0   |
| 2        | 2              | 2              | 2              | 2              | 2    | 2                        | 2        | 2   | 2      | 2   | 2   |
| 4        | 4              | 4              | 4              | 4              | 4    | 4                        | 4        | 4   | 4      | 4   | 4   |
| 6        | 6              | 6              | 6              | 6              | 6    | 6                        | 6        | 6   | 6      | 6   | 6   |
| 8        | 8              | 8              | 8              | 8              | 8    | 8                        | 8        | 8   | 8      | 8   | 8   |
| 10       |                | 10             | 10             | 10             | 10   | 10                       | 10       | 10  | 10     | 10  | 10  |
| 12       |                | 12             | 12             | 12             | 12   | 12                       | 12       | 12  | 12     | 12  | 12  |
| 14       |                | 14             |                | 14             | 14   | 14                       | 14       | 14  | 14     | 14  | 14  |
| 16       |                | 16             | 16             | 16             | 16   | 16                       | 16       | 16  | 16     | 16  | 16  |
| 18       |                | 18             |                | 18             | 18   | 18                       | 18       | 18  | 18     | 18  | 18  |
| 20       | 20             | 20             | 20             | 20             | 20   | 20                       | 20       | 20  | 20     | 20  | 20  |
| A-2      | A-4            | A-6            | A-8            | A-10           | A-12 |                          | C-1      | C-2 | C-3    | C-4 | C-5 |
| 0        |                | 0              | 0              | 0              | 0    |                          | 0        | 0   | 0      | 0   | 0   |
| 2        |                | 2              | 2              | 2              | 2    |                          | 2        | 2   | 2      | 2   | 2   |
| 4        |                | 4              | 4              | 4              | 4    |                          | 4        | 4   | 4      | 6   | 4   |
| 6        |                | 6              | 6              | 6<br>8         | 6    |                          | 8        | 6   | 6      |     | 6   |
| 10       |                | 8              | 8              | 8<br>10        | 8    |                          | 8        | 8   | 10     | 8   | 8   |
| 12       | 12             | 10             | 10             | 10             | 12   |                          | 12       | 10  | 12     | 12  | 12  |
| 14       | 12             | 12             |                |                | 12   |                          | 14       | 14  | 14     | 14  |     |
| -        |                | _              |                |                |      |                          | 16       | 16  | 16     | 16  |     |
| -        | $\sim$         | 8              | 8              | 8              | 8    |                          | 18       | 18  | 19-19- |     | /   |
| /        | 10             | 10             | 10             | 10             | 10   |                          |          |     |        | /   | 10  |
| 12       | 12             | 12             | 12             | 12             | 12   |                          |          |     |        |     | 12  |
| 14       | 14             | 14             | 14             | 14             | 14   |                          | 14       |     | 14     | 14  | 14  |
| 16       | 16             | 16             | 16             | 16             | 16   |                          | 16       | 16  | 16     |     | 16  |
| 18       | 18             | 18             | 18             | 18             | 18   |                          | 18<br>20 | 18  | 18     |     | 18  |
| 20       | 20             | 20             | 20             | 20             | 20   |                          | 20       | 20  | 20     | 20  | 20  |
| Canon    | n imagePROGR   | AF iPF600      | Printhead Adju | stment Pattern |      |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| D-1      | D-2            | D-3            | D-4            | D-5            | D-6  |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 0        | 0              | 0              |                |                | 0    |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 2        | 2              |                |                |                | 2    |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 4        | 4              | 4              | 4              | 4              | 4    |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 6        | 6              | 6              | 6              | 6              | 6    |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 8        | 8              | 8              | 8              | 8              | 8    |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
|          | 10             | 10             | 10             | 10             | 10   |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 10       |                |                |                |                | 12   |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 10<br>12 | 12             | 12             |                | 12             |      |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
|          |                | 14             | 14             | 12             | 14   |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 12       |                |                | 14             |                |      |                          |          |     |        |     |     |
| 12<br>14 | 14<br>16<br>18 | 14<br>16<br>18 | 14<br>16<br>18 | 14             | 14   |                          |          |     |        |     |     |

D-12

E-5

3

20

0

4

E-3 0

2 4 6 8

D-8

4 6 8

F-1

0

3 3

10 12

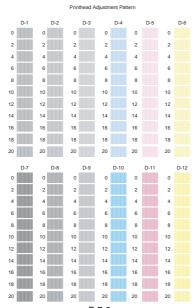
E-2

4

F-7-5

### f) BASIC

A sample printout that is produced by executing [SERVICE MODE]> [ADJUST]> [HEAD ADJ.] > [AUTO HEAD ADJ]> [BASIC] is shown below.



F-7-6

## 7.2 Special Mode

### 7.2.1 Special Modes for Servicing

This printer supports the following special modes in addition to the service mode:

- PCB replacement mode

- Download mode
- Counter display mode

### 1. PCB replacement mode

This mode is used when replacing the main PCB or MC relay PCB. By executing this mode,

- Backup data of the settings and counter values stored in the MC relay PCB are moved to the new main PCB.

- The data such as the settings and counter values are copied to the MC relay PCB.

a) Entering the PCB replacement mode

Follow the same procedure as that for entering the service mode. (With the "Paper Source" button and "Information" button pressed down, turn on the "Power" button.)

When the printer starts up, compare the serial number memorized in the main PCB's EEPROM with that memorized in the MC relay PCB's EEPROM. If they do not match, or no serial number is memorized in either EEPROM, enter the PCB replacement mode. While you are in the PCB replacement mode, the MESSAGE LED, roll media LED, and ONLINE LED are lit.

### b) Procedure

Select "CPU BOARD" or "MC BOARD" using the [ ] and [ ] buttons, and then press the [OK] button to determine it.

CPU BOARD

Select this after replacing the main PCB. The data in the MC relay PCB is copied to the main PCB.

- MC BOARD

Select this before replacing the main PCB. The data in the main PCB is copied to the MC relay PCB. Use this when the MC relay PCB is a new one

c) Exiting the PCB replacement mode

Turning off the Power button of the printer allows you to exit the PCB replacement mode.

For details on how to replace the PCB, see Parts Replacement Procedure > Disassembly/Reassembly > Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly > Boards.

### 2. Download mode

Use this mode only when updating the firmware without performing initialization.

a) Entering the download mode

- 2) With the "Stop" and "Information" buttons pressed down, turn on the Power button of the printer.
  \* Keep pressing the above buttons until "Initializing" appears on the display.

b) Procedure

When "Download Mode/Send Firmware" is shown on the display, transfer the firmware. When downloading of the firmware is completed, the printer is turned off automatically.

3. Counter display mode Use this mode to view only printer counter information.

a) Invoking counter display mode

1) Press the [MENU] button to keep [Information] > [System Info] selected.

2) Press the [▲] button whole holding down the [MENU] button + [OK] button to invoke counter display mode.

b) How to view counter display mode - S/N: Unit serial number

- CNT: Number of copies printed in A4 terms (unit: copies)

Chapter 8 ERROR CODE

# Contents

| 8.1 Outline               | 8-1 |
|---------------------------|-----|
| 8.1.1 Outline             | 8-1 |
| 8.2 Warning Table         | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1 Warnings            | 8-1 |
| 8.3 Error Table           | 8-2 |
| 8.3.1 Error Code List     | 8-2 |
| 8.4 Sevice Call Table     | 8-3 |
| 8.4.1 Service call errors | 8-3 |

## 8.1 Outline

### 8.1.1 Outline

The printer indicates errors using the display and LEDs.

If an error occurs during printing, the printer status is also displayed on the status monitor of the printer driver. The following three types of errors are displayed on the display:

· Warning

Status where the print operation can be continued without remedying the cause of the problem. This can, however, adversely affect the printing results. - Error

Status where the print operation is stopped, and the regular operation cannot be recovered until the cause of the problem is remedied. Service call error

When a service call error occurs, the error is not cleared and the error indication remains on the operation panel even if the printer is powered off and on again. (Occurrence of the service call error is indicated again at power-on.)

This measure is taken to prevent user's recovery of the service call error and damages to the printer. Service call errors can be cleared, however, by starting up the printer in the service mode.

For how to take actions against warnings and errors, refer to "Troubleshooting".

### Overview of warnings and error codes

T-8-1

| Code*              | Diagnosis   |
|--------------------|---|
| 0181010x-100x      | Ink warning                                       |
| 01841001-1100      | Waste ink warning                                 |
| 0134122x-103x      | GARO warning                                      |
| 01800500-1010      | Printhead warning                                 |
| 03xxxxxx-20xx,24xx | Media feeding error<br>Data mismatch error        |
| 03xxxxx-2Exx       | Cover open error                                  |
| 03xxxxx-25xx       | Ink error   |
| 03xxxxx-280x       | Printhead error                                   |
| 03xxxxx-281x       | Maintenance cartridge error                       |
| 03xxxxx-282x       | Adjustment error                                  |
| 03xxxxxx-2Fxx,26xx | Head management sensor unit error<br>Other errors |
| Exxx-40xx          | Service call error                                |

\* "x" stands for a numeric or letter.

### 8.2 Warning Table

### 8.2.1 Warnings

The codes correspond to the numbers shown on the DIPLAY in the service mode.

| Code | Display massage                                      | Status   |
|------|--|--|
| 1000 | Ink Lv1: Chk   | BK ink tank is almost empty                                    |
| 1001 | Ink Lv1: Chk   | Y ink tank is almost empty                                     |
| 1002 | Ink Lv1: Chk   | M ink tank is almost empty                                     |
| 1003 | Ink Lv1: Chk   | C ink tank is almost empty                                     |
| 1006 | Ink Lv1: Chk   | MBK ink tank is almost empty                                   |
| 1007 | Ink Lv1: Chk   | MBK2 ink tank is almost empty                                  |
| 100F | Feed Limit   | Force feed limit   |
| 1010 | Check printed document.                              | Ink non discharging  |
| 1100 | Check maint cartridge capacity.                      | Maintenance cartridge is almost full                           |
| 1221 | GARO W1221   | Unsupported command in GARO image mode                         |
| 1222 | GARO W1222   | Invalid number of parameters in GARO image mode (no parameter) |
| 1223 | GARO W1223   | Required item was omitted in GARO image mode                   |
| 1225 | GARO W1225   | Other warning in GARO image mode                               |
| 1231 | GARO W1231   | Unsupported command in GARO setting mode                       |
| 1232 | GARO W1232   | Invalid number of parameters in GARO setting mode              |
| 1233 | GARO W1233   | Reauired item was omitted in GARO setting mode                 |
| 1234 | GARO W1234   | Data out of range in GARO image mode                           |
| 1235 | GARO W1235   | Other warning in GARO setting mode                             |
|      | Prepare for parts replacement. Call for service.     | Parts counter warning level 1                                  |
|      | Parts replacement time has passed. Call for service. | Parts counter warning level 2                                  |

T-8-2

# 8.3 Error Table

# 8.3.1 Error Code List

\*The codes correspond to the numbers shown on the DISPLAY in the service mode.

T-8-3

| Code*                          | Description  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 03010000-200C                  | Media leading edge not detected  |
| 03010000-200D                  | Cut sheet end cannot be detected   |
| 03010000-2017                  | Media right edge not detected  |
| 03010000-2018                  | Media left edge not detected   |
| 03010000-2820                  | Head resistration improper adjustment  |
| 03010000-2821                  | LF improper adjustment   |
| 03010000-2822                  | Eccentricity improper adjustment   |
| 03010000-2823                  | Printhead check error  |
| 03010000-2E1F                  | To print internal, a small form was set.   |
| 03010000-2E25                  | Feed error   |
| 03010000-2E27                  | Media became misaligned during printing  |
| 03010000-2F33                  | Transparent media was loaded and cannot adjust   |
| 03016000-2010                  | Media skewed   |
| 03030000-2E21                  | IEEE1394 error   |
| 03060000-2E14                  | Media width mismatch   |
| 03060000-2E16                  | Form kind and size mismatch(Only the cassette)   |
| 03060200-2E03                  | The cut sheet is not set in the cassette though the data of the cassette specification was received. |
| 03060200-2E0B                  | When hand difference cut sheet had been loaded, the data of the cassette specification was received. |
| 03060A00-2E00                  | Roll media was not loaded even though the received data indicated roll media.                        |
| 03060A00-2E01                  | When the test is printed, it is the roll paper none.   |
| 03060A00-2E01                  | Roll paper unit uninstallation   |
| 03060A00-2E1B                  | End of roll media  |
| 03061000-2E15                  | Media type mismatch  |
| 03130031-291B                  | Lift movement time-out   |
| 03130031-291D                  | Lift cam sensor detection failure  |
|                                |  |
| 03130031-2E23                  | Cutter unit breakdown  |
| 03130031-2F13<br>03130031-2F14 | A/D converter outside trigger output stop  |
|                                | ASIC register writing error  |
| 03130031-2F16                  | Mist fan error   |
| 03130031-2F17                  | Platen fan error   |
| 03130031-2F20                  | Purge motor error  |
| 03130031-2F22                  | Pump movement time-out   |
| 03130031-2F23                  | Pump cannot operate  |
| 03130031-2F24                  | Cutter movement time-out   |
| 03130031-2F25                  | Unable to detect carriage motor home position  |
| 03130031-2F26                  | Carriage motor driving error   |
| 03130031-2F27                  | Carriage motor time-out  |
| 03130031-2F28                  | Purge sensor error   |
| 03130031-2F2A                  | Feed roller HP sensor error  |
| 03130031-2F2D                  | Cassette driving error   |
| 03130031-2F2E                  | Roll media feeding motor time-out  |
| 03130031-2F32                  | Multi sensor error   |
| 03130031-2F3A                  | Valve motor error  |
| 03180003-2E22                  | MIT error  |
| 03180101-2E17                  | Cassette uninstallation  |
| 03800200-2802                  | Incorrect printhead was installed  |
| 03800300-2801                  | Unable to correct printhead DI   |
| 03800400-2803                  | Printhead EEPROM error   |
| 03800500-280C                  | Many nozzle on printhead did not inject ink  |
| 03800500-2F2F                  | No ink ejection detection error  |
| 03800500-2F30                  | No ink ejection detection position adjustment error  |
| 03810101-2501                  | No ink (Y)   |
| 03810102-2502                  | No ink (M)   |
| 03810103-2503                  | No ink (C)   |
| 03810104-2500                  | No ink (BK)  |
| 03810106-2506                  | No ink (MBK)   |
| 03810106-2507                  | No ink (MBK2)  |
| 03810201-2581                  | Remaining ink low (Y)  |
| 03810201-2591                  | Remaining ink low (Y)  |
|                                |  |

| Code*         | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| 03810202-2582 | Remaining ink low (M)  |
| 03810202-2592 | Remaining ink low (M)  |
| 03810203-2583 | Remaining ink low (C)  |
| 03810203-2593 | Remaining ink low (C)  |
| 03810204-2580 | Remaining ink low (BK)   |
| 03810204-2590 | Remaining ink low (BK)   |
| 03810206-2586 | Remaining ink low (MBK)  |
| 03810206-2587 | Remaining ink low (MBK2)   |
| 03810206-2596 | Remaining ink low (MBK)  |
| 03810206-2597 | Remaining ink low (MBK2)   |
| 03830101-2521 | Ink tank not installed (Y)   |
| 03830102-2522 | Ink tank not installed (M)   |
| 03830103-2523 | Ink tank not installed (C)   |
| 03830104-2520 | Ink tank not installed (BK)  |
| 03830106-2526 | Ink tank not installed (MBK)   |
| 03830106-2527 | Ink tank not installed (MBK2)  |
| 03830201-2541 | Ink tank ID error (Y)  |
| 03830202-2542 | Ink tank ID error (M)  |
| 03830203-2543 | Ink tank ID error (C)  |
| 03830204-2540 | Ink tank ID error (BK)   |
| 03830206-2546 | Ink tank ID error (MBK)  |
| 03830206-2547 | Ink tank ID error (MBK2)   |
| 03830301-2561 | Ink tank EEPROM error (Y)  |
| 03830302-2562 | Ink tank EEPROM error (M)  |
| 03830303-2563 | Ink tank EEPROM error (C)  |
| 03830303-2572 | Remaining ink low (M)  |
| 03830304-2560 | Ink tank EEPROM error (BK)   |
| 03830304-2570 | Remaining ink low (BK)   |
| 03830306-2566 | Ink tank EEPROM error (MBK)  |
| 03830306-2567 | Ink tank EEPROM error (MBK2)   |
| 03830306-2576 | Remaining ink low (MBK)  |
| 03830306-2577 | Remaining ink low (MBK2)   |
| 03830312-2571 | Remaining ink low (Y)  |
| 03830313-2573 | Remaining ink low (C)  |
| 03841001-2819 | Maintenance cartridge tank full  |
| 03841001-281B | Empty capacity of the maintenance cartridge when cleaning it various is insufficient.    |
| 03841101-2818 | Maintenance cartridge not installed  |
| 03841201-2816 | Maintenance cartridge EEPROM error   |
| 03841201-2817 | Maintenance cartridge ID error   |
| 03860002-2E0A | Manually fed cut sheet was already loaded even though received data indicated roll media |
| 03861001-2405 | The form set position is unsuitable to the print of edge none.                           |
| 03861001-2406 | Data is unsuitable to the print of edge none.  |
| 03862000-2E09 | Roll paper running out   |
| 03870001-2015 | Cut error  |
| E194-4034     | Sensor calibration error(not generated in the user mode.)                                |

# 8.4 Sevice Call Table

### 8.4.1 Service call errors

\*Codes correspond to the numbers shown on the DIPLAY in the service mode.

| Code*     | Description                                       |
|-----------|---|
| E141-4046 | Recovery system rotation count reached 50,000.    |
| E144-4047 | Feed system counting error                        |
| E146-4001 | Borderless/idle ejection/mist recovery count full |
| E161-403E | Abnormally high printhead temperature             |
| E194-404A | No ink ejection counting error                    |
| E196-4040 | Checksum error                                    |
| E196-4041 | Flash memory clearing error                       |
| E196-4042 | Flash memory write error                          |
| E196-4043 | Main controller error                             |
| E196-4045 | EEPROM write error                                |
| E196-4049 | Forwarding ROM data machine kind difference       |
| E198-401C | RTC error   |

| Code*     | Description           |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| E198-401D | RTC low battery error |
| E198-401E | RTC clock stopped     |

=

Jul 3 2007

